

**PRV**PATENT- OCH REGISTRERINGSVERKET  
Patentavdelningen

REC'D 27 JUL 2004

WIPO

PCT

**Intyg  
Certificate**

Härmed intygas att bifogade kopior överensstämmer med de handlingar som ursprungligen ingivits till Patent- och registreringsverket i nedannämnda ansökan.

This is to certify that the annexed is a true copy of the documents as originally filed with the Patent- and Registration Office in connection with the following patent application.



(71) Sökande                      Biolipox AB, Stockholm SE  
Applicant (s)

(21) Patentansökningsnummer    0302035-1  
Patent application number

(86) Ingivningsdatum                      2003-07-09  
Date of filing

Stockholm, 2004-02-10

För Patent- och registreringsverket  
For the Patent- and Registration Office

*Hjördis Segerlund*  
Hjördis Segerlund

Avgift  
Fee                      170:-

**PRIORITY  
DOCUMENT**  
SUBMITTED OR TRANSMITTED IN  
COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 17.1(a) OR (b)

**PATENT- OCH  
REGISTRERINGSVERKET  
SWEDEN**

Postadress/Address  
Box 5055  
S-102 42 STOCKHOLM

Telefon/Phone  
+46 8 782 25 00  
Vx 08-782 25 00

Telex  
17978  
PATOREG S

Telefax  
+46 8 666 02 86  
08-666 02 86

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

NEW COMPOUNDSFIELD OF THE INVENTION

- 5 This invention relates to novel compounds, to pharmaceutical compositions comprising the compounds, as well as to the use of the compounds in medicine and for the preparation of a medicament, which acts on the membrane associated prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> synthase (mPGES) enzyme. It is of special interest to provide a treatment or alleviation of inflammatory diseases and disorders
- 10 having an inflammatory component, for the treatment or alleviation of pain, and for the alleviation of fever.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

15

- Arachidonic acid is converted by the cyclo-oxygenase (COX) to the unstable intermediate prostaglandin (PG) H<sub>2</sub>, which is further metabolized to other prostaglandins (e.g. PGE<sub>2</sub>, PGF<sub>2α</sub>, PGD<sub>2</sub> etc), prostacyclin and thromboxane. These metabolites are highly potent compounds, with both physiological and
- 20 pathophysiological effects. The COX enzyme exists in two forms, one which is constitutively expressed in many cells and tissues (COX-1) and one form, which is induced by proinflammatory cytokines during an inflammatory reaction (COX-2).

25

- Prostaglandin PGE<sub>2</sub> is a strong pro-inflammatory mediator and also induces fever and pain. Compounds belonging to the classes usually denoted "NSAIDs" (Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs) and "coxibs" (selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors) act predominantly by inhibition of COX-1 and/or COX-2, thereby reducing the formation of the proinflammatory PGE<sub>2</sub>.

30

- However, by inhibiting the cyclooxygenase(s) the production of all metabolites will be decreased. As some of these arachidonic acid metabolites have beneficial properties the inhibition of the cyclooxygenase(s) are causing, or are

5 suspected to cause, adverse biological effects. For example, the unselective inhibition of cyclooxygenase(s) by NSAIDs gives gastrointestinal (GI) side effects and affects platelet and renal function. The selective inhibition of COX-2 by the coxibs has reduced the frequency of GI side effects, but is instead believed to cause cardiovascular problems.

Thus, an agent that would selectively inhibit the transformation of  $\text{PGH}_2$  to  $\text{PGE}_2$  during inflammation is not expected to give rise to these unwanted side effects. The enzyme responsible for this transformation is the prostaglandin  $\text{E}_2$  synthase (PGES). This enzyme exists in both a cytosolic and a membrane-associated form. Whereas the cytosolic enzyme is widely expressed and involved in formation of  $\text{PGE}_2$  for various physiological effects, the membrane associated PGES is induced by proinflammatory cytokines and is responsible for the production of large amounts of  $\text{PGE}_2$  during inflammation. This invention describes compounds that are selective inhibitors of the membrane-associated form of PGES, the mPGES.

mPGES belongs to the MAPEG (membrane-associated proteins in eicosanoid and glutathione metabolism) family, which has been defined according to enzymatic activities, sequence motifs and structural properties. Other members of the MAPEG family comprise the 5-lipoxygenase-activating protein (FLAP), leukotriene  $\text{C}_4$  synthase, microsomal glutathione S-transferase 1 (MGST1), MGST2, and MGST3. Also these proteins are involved in the formation of arachidonic acid metabolites that may have profound biological activities.

25

Accordingly, blocking the effect of mPGES is equivalent to a pharmacological effect against inflammatory diseases and processes, and against diseases, disorders and conditions where pain or fever is present. Accordingly, selective mPGES inhibitors would be important for alleviating, preventing, inhibiting or treating a disease, disorder, or condition associated with inflammation, acute or chronic pain, or fever, such as: inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, migraine, headache, low back pain, fibromyalgia, myofascial

30

**In all of the above mentioned conditions, the mPGES inhibitors may be beneficial alone or in combination with other active drugs.**



PRIOR ART

The present invention relates to indole-2-carboxylic acid, derivatives thereof, such as esters, amides, hydroxamic acids, or analogues thereof, such as

- 5 2-(hydroxymethyl)indoles, in which the indole skeleton is substituted in the 4, 5, 6, or 7-position with an aromatic group, and in which at the same time an aromatic residue is connected via a spacer to the indole nitrogen, and in which the indole skeleton is also substituted in the 3-position with an aromatic residue, or with an amide residue through its nitrogen atom.

10

- WO 94/14434 from SmithKline Beecham claims certain indole-2-carboxylic acids as endothelin receptor antagonists and their use for treating hypertension, renal failure and cerebrovascular disease. Indoles which have an aromatic group in the indolic 3-position and at the same time an aromatic group in either the
- 15 indolic 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-position are covered by the general structure in the claims but are not exemplified. It is unlikely that such compounds ever have been made and thus unknown if they are endothelin receptor antagonists.

- WO 96/3377 from Sankyo claims certain indole-2-carboxylic acids as allosteric
- 20 effectors at the muscarinic receptor. Although indoles which have an aromatic group in the indolic 3-position which at the same time have an aromatic group in either the indolic 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-position are claimed, the claims demand the absolute presence of a carboxyl group, a thiocarboxy group, a sulfonamide, a tetrazole or any of their protected analogues, etc, in the 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-position
- 25 that is not substituted by an aromatic group.

- WO 99/43673 from Genetics Institute contains four independent very broad
- 30 compound claims covering various indoles and indolines as phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> inhibitors and their use in inflammation *etc.* The extremely broad definitions in the claims include some aspects claimed in the present application. However, there is neither one single compound with an aromatic group or an amide in the indolic 3-position included in the examples, nor is any route for their synthesis

described. It is unlikely that such compounds ever have been made and thus unknown if they are phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> inhibitors.

AstraZeneca has a number of patents and patent applications covering indole-  
5 2-carboxylic acids and their use in the treatment of disease mediated by  
monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1) or RANTES (Regulated upon  
Activation, Normal T-Cell Expressed and Secreted), such as inflammatory  
disease. The compound claims are very broad. For example, some applications  
claim "hydrocarbyl"-substituents in the benzenoid part of the molecules, where  
10 hydrocarbyl "refers to any structure comprising carbon and hydrogen atoms".  
Some of the patents or applications claim compounds with specific substituent  
in the 4-position *i.e.* amides or sulfonamides connected *via* their nitrogens or  
carbonates connected *via* an oxygen (WO 00/46195, EP 1159269), ethers,  
sulfones or sulfoxides (US 6569888, WO 00/46198), substituted alkyl or  
15 amides connected *via* the carbonyl-carbon (WO 00/46197), but compounds  
which have aromatic residues in the 5-, 6-, or the 7-position are not  
exemplified. The claims in WO 00/46199 include a "hydrocarbyl" or a  
heteroaryl group in the 4-position, as well as in the 5-, 6-, or 7-positions. As  
before, compounds with aromatic residues in either the 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-position  
20 are not exemplified. The claims in all the patents and patent applications from  
this class, only covers compounds in which the 1-substituents is an aromatic  
moiety connected to the indole nitrogen through a CH<sub>2</sub> or a SO<sub>2</sub> linker. It is  
unlikely that compounds like the ones referred to in the present invention, *i.e.*  
compounds where there is an aromatic group in the indolic 4-, 5-, 6-, or  
25 7-position, ever have been made, and it is thus unknown if they are active at  
MCP-1 or RANTES.

A related patent from Zeneca (US 6441004) claim compounds with aromatic  
residues in the benzenoid part of the indole skeleton, and such compounds are  
30 also exemplified. However, the claims do not include aromatic or amide  
substituents in the indolic 3-position, and the examples only include  
3-unsubstituted or 3-bromo-substituted compounds. Again, it is unlikely that

compounds as those described in the present application have been synthesized and tested.

There are a number of patents and patent applications that claim compounds  
5 that show some resemblance to the ones claimed in the present invention.

NMDA receptor antagonists which are indole-2-carboxylic acids with an amide  
functionality has been claimed by Merrel Dow for the use of various conditions  
and diseases (*e. g.* US 5189054). No compounds with an aromatic moiety  
10 directly connected to either the 4-, 5-, 6-, or the 7-position of the indole ring are  
claimed.

Compounds as PPAR- $\gamma$  agonists for use in the treatment of obesity, diabetes,  
inflammation, *etc.*, have been claimed by Merck in WO 01/30343. The claims  
15 covers indole-2-alkanoic acids, including indole-2-carboxylic acids, with aryl  
groups in the indole 3-position. No compounds with an aromatic moiety  
directly connected to either the 4-, 5-, 6-, or the 7-position of the indole ring are  
however claimed. A related patent (US 6525083) does not claim a carboxylic  
residue in the 2-position of the indole.

20

Merck Frosst claims indole-2-alkanoic acids as prostaglandin antagonists (EP  
166591). Compounds with phenyl groups in the 3- and in the 4-, 5-, 6-, or the  
7-position of the indole ring are included in the claims, but indole-2-carboxylic  
acids are not.

25

Merck Frosst also has a large number of patents and patent applications (*e.g.*  
US 5081138, EP 535924) that claims indole-2-alkanoic acids as inhibitors of  
FLAP (5-lipoxygenase-activating protein) as anti-asthmatic, anti-allergic, anti-  
inflammatory agents, *etc.* However, the claims do not cover the compounds  
30 described in the present application.

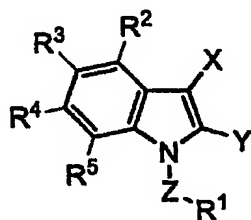


SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One object of the present invention is an indole-2-carboxylic acid, a derivative thereof, such as an ester, amide, hydroxamic acid, or an analogue thereof, such as a 2-(hydroxymethyl)indole, in which the indole skeleton is substituted in the 4, 5, 6, or 7-position with aryl or heteroaryl, and in which an aryl or a heteroaryl residue is connected via a spacer to the indole nitrogen, and in which the indole skeleton is substituted in the 3-position with an aryl or a heteroaryl residue, or with an amide residue through its nitrogen atom.

10

Another object of the present invention is a compound of formula (I):



(I)

wherein:

15

X is selected from:

20

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

25

Y is selected from  $HOCH_2-$ ,  $(R^8)NHC(O)-$ ,  $R^8ONHC(O)-$ , and  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more

positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ; and wherein one or more atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain are optionally part of an additional  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-ring, where the said ring  
 5 optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

$R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be  
 10 optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

15 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 20  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  
 25  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 30  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

- (iii) hydrogen, halogen,  $\text{NC-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C(Q)-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC(Q)-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC(Q)-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{SC(Q)-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{C(Q)N(R}^{12})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{C(Q)N(R}^{12})\text{-}$ ,  
 5  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{11})\text{C(Q)N(R}^{12})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{SC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{N}_3\text{-}$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{S(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{12})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC(Q)N(R}^{11})\text{S(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{12})\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{11})\text{S(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{12})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS(O)}_q\text{N(R}^{11})\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C(Q)O-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC(Q)O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC(Q)O-}$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{NO-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S(O)}_q\text{O-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS(O)}_q\text{O-}$ ,  
 10  $\text{R}^8\text{OS(O)}_q\text{O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S(O)}_q\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS(O)}_q\text{-}$ , and  $\text{R}^8\text{OS(O)}_q\text{-}$ ;

or any adjacent pair of  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^3$ ,  $\text{R}^4$ , or  $\text{R}^5$  may be part of an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or  
 15 more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $\text{R}^8\text{-}$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{O-}$ , and  $\text{O=}$ ;

provided that at least one of  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^3$ ,  $\text{R}^4$ , or  $\text{R}^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions  
 20 independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

25

A is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 30 groups selected from B;

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,

- 5  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  
 $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  
10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(Q)O$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO$ -,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8S$ -,  $R^8S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_q$ -,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

15

- (iii) halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  
20  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(Q)O$ -,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO$ -,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8S$ -,  $R^8S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q$ -, and  $R^8OS(O)_q$ ;

25

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups
- 30 independently selected from halogen,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8O$ -, and  $O=$ ;

B is selected from:



- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, and O=;
- (ii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, S=, R<sup>8</sup>N=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NN=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, O<sub>2</sub>NCH=, and (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)C=;

- (iii) halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q)N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q)N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, 5 (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q)N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, 10 R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, and R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups 15 independently selected from halogen, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, and O=;

R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>7</sup> are each independently selected from:

- 20 (i) hydrogen;

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

25

- (iii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)-, 30 R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q)N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q)N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q)N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-,

$O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
5  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

or where  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and  
 10 which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3  
 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by  
 one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  
 $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  
 $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  
 15  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  
 20  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

$R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are each independently selected from:

25

(i) hydrogen;

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 30 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})C(W')N(R^{17})-$ ,

- $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
5  $R^{13}OS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)O-$ ,  
 $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ , and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain  
carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on  
each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue,  
10 where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or  
more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  
 $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ , and  $O=$ ;
- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
15  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  
20  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)O-$ ,  
25  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^{13}N=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^{14})(R^{15})C=$ ;
- or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8  
30 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and  
optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more  
positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,

- $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}C(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
5  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  
10  $R^{13}N=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})C=$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ ,  $R^{16}$  and  $R^{17}$  are each independently selected from:

15

(i) hydrogen;

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

20

groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,

$R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}SC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,

$(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,

$R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,

$R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}SC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,

25

$(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,

$R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,

$R^{18}OS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,

$O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,

$(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and

30

dimethylmethylenedioxy;

(iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,

- 5  $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}SC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}SC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  
10  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  
 $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^{18}N=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  $R^{18}ON=$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^{19})(R^{20})C=$ ;

15

or where any pair of  $R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ ,  $R^{16}$  and  $R^{17}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-7 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,

- 20  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}SC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  
 $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}SC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  
25  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  
 $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^{18}N=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  $R^{18}ON=$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^{19})(R^{20})C=$ ;

30

$R^{18}$ ,  $R^{19}$ ,  $R^{20}$ ,  $R^{21}$  and  $R^{22}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

(ii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more halogens, H<sub>2</sub>N-, MeHN-, EtHN-, *i*-PrHN-, Me<sub>2</sub>N-, Et(Me)N-, *i*-Pr(Me)N-,

5 Et<sub>2</sub>N-, HO-, MeO-, EtO-, *i*-PrO- or =O;

Q and Q' are substituents connected by a double bond, and are each independently selected from:

10 O=, S=, R<sup>9</sup>N=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NN=, R<sup>9</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, O<sub>2</sub>NCH=, and (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)C=;

W and W' are substituents connected by a double bond, and are each independently selected from:

15

O=, S=, R<sup>13</sup>N=, (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)NN=, R<sup>13</sup>ON=, (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, O<sub>2</sub>NCH=, and (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)C=;

q is 1 or 2;

20

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

A preferred embodiment of the present invention relates to compounds according to the general formula (I), wherein ;

25

X is selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

30

(ii) R<sup>6</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>7</sup>)-

Y is selected from  $(R^8)NHC(O)-$ ,  $R^8ONHC(O)-$ , and  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

- 5 Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ; and wherein one or more atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain are optionally part of an
- 10 additional  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-ring, where the said ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;
- 15  $R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

20

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

- 25 (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,
- 30



$(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  
 5  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

(iii) hydrogen, halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  
 $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  
 $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  
 15  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

or any adjacent pair of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  may be part of an alkylene chain having  
 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms,  
 20 where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or  
 more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  
 $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

provided that at least one of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any  
 25 residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions  
 independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

A is selected from:

30 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 groups selected from B;

- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more
- 5 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,
- 10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and
- 15  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

- (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,
- 20  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,
- 25  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene
- 30 chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

B is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, and O=;
- (ii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NN=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;
- (iii) halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, and R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , or  $O=$ ;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen;
- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B,
- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- or where  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,

$R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

5  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen;
- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 10 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 15  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 , and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene  
 chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent  
 carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene  
 chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups  
 20 independently selected from halogen,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -hetero-  
 cycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or  
 more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected  
 25 from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN=$ ,  
 30  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,

- 5  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN=$ ,  
 10  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ , and  $R^{16}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

15

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  
 20  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  
 $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

25 (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -hetero-  
 cycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or  
 more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected  
 from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  
 30  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,

$R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  
 $R^{18}ON=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- or where any pair of  $R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$  and  $R^{16}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-7  
 5 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and  
 optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more  
 positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  
 $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  
 $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  
 10  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  
 $R^{18}ON=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- 15  $R^{18}$ ,  $R^{19}$ ,  $R^{20}$ , and  $R^{21}$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen;
- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more  
 20 halogens,  $H_2N-$ ,  $MeHN-$ ,  $EtHN-$ ,  $i\text{-}PrHN-$ ,  $Me_2N-$ ,  $Et(Me)N-$ ,  $i\text{-}Pr(Me)N-$ ,  
 $Et_2N-$ ,  $HO-$ ,  $MeO-$ ,  $EtO-$ ,  $i\text{-}PrO-$  or  $=O$ ;

$Q$  and  $Q'$  are substituents connected by a double bond, and are each  
 independently selected from:

- 25  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ ,  
 and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

$q$  is 1 or 2;

30

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

A more preferred embodiment is ;

X is selected from:

- 5 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

10

Y is selected from  $(R^8)NHC(O)-$ , and  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

- Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , or  $O=$ ; and wherein one or more atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain are optionally part of an additional  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-ring, where the said ring optionally contains 1-2 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;
- 15
- 20

- $R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;
- 25

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

- 30 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;



(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

(iii) hydrogen, halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

or any adjacent pair of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  may be part of an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

provided that at least one of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

A is selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more
- 5 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,
- 10  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,
- 15  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent
- 20 carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

B is selected from:

25

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more
- groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,
- 30  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,

$R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

- 5 (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 10  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- 15 (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  
 $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;
- 20 (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene  
 chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent  
 carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene  
 chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups  
 25 independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen,

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

- 5 (iii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;

- 15 or where R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>7</sup> are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;

25

R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, and R<sup>11</sup> are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

- 30 (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>13</sup>-, R<sup>13</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)NC(O)-,

$R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$

5 , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

(iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or

$C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

10 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$   
15 ,  $O=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , and  $R^{11}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more

20 positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  
 $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
25  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ , and  $R^{16}$  are each independently selected from:

30 (i) hydrogen;

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more halogens,  $H_2N-$ ,  $MeHN-$ ,  $EtHN-$ ,  $i-PrHN-$ ,  $Me_2N-$ ,  $Et(Me)N-$ ,  $i-Pr(Me)N-$ ,  $Et_2N-$ ,  $HO-$ ,  $MeO-$ ,  $EtO-$ ,  $i-PrO-$  or  $=O$ ;

5 q is 1 or 2;

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

A particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention relates to  
10 compounds according to the general formula (I), wherein ;

X is selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
15 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

20 Y is  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more  
25 positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , or  $O=$ ; and wherein one or two carbon atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain may be common to an additional cyclopropyl ring;

30  $R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

(iii) hydrogen, halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ;

or any adjacent pair of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  may be part of a methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, or dimethylmethylenedioxy residue;

provided that at least one of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

A is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;
- 5 (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)$ -,  $R^8OC(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,
- 10  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(O)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^8OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2$ -,  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- 15 (iii) halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)$ -,  $R^8OC(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(O)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^8OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2$ -, methylenedioxy,
- 20 difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

B is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)$ -,  $R^8OC(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(O)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^8OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2$ -, methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;
- 25
- 30



- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)$ -,
- 5  $R^8OC(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(O)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^8OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2$ -,  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- 10
- (iii) halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)$ -,  $R^8OC(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(O)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^8OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O$ -,
- 15  $R^8OS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_2$ -, methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

- 20 (i) hydrogen;
- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;
- 25
- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)$ -,
- 30  $R^8OC(O)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})$ -,

$R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- 5 or where  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are optionally joined to form a 5-6 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- 15  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , and  $R^{11}$  are each independently selected from:
- (i) hydrogen;
- 20 (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 25  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_2-$ ,  
 , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;
- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 30  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,

$R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_2-$   
 5 ,  $O=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , and  $R^{11}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8  
 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and  
 optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more  
 10 positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  
 $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}S(O)_2N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  
 15  $R^{13}OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_2-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ , and  $R^{16}$  are each independently selected from:

20 (i) hydrogen;

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more  
 halogens,  $H_2N-$ ,  $MeHN-$ ,  $EtHN-$ ,  $i\text{-PrHN-}$ ,  $Me_2N-$ ,  $Et(Me)N-$ ,  $i\text{-Pr(Me)N-}$ ,  
 $Et_2N-$ ,  $HO-$ ,  $MeO-$ ,  $EtO-$ ,  $i\text{-PrO-}$  or  $=O$ ;

25

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

Especially preferred are the following compounds:

30 (E1): 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid;

- (E2): 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-(2-thienyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E3): 5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- 5 (E4): 3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(3-pyridinyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E5): 6-(4-Benzoyloxyphenyl)-3-(3-carboxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E6): 3-(3-Carboxyphenyl)-4-phenyl-1-(3-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- 10 (E7): 6-(4-Benzoyloxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E8): 3-(2-Oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-5-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E9): 1-(3,5-Difluorobenzyl)-4-methoxy-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-7-
- 15 phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E10): 6-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(3,5-bis-trifluoromethylbenzyl)-3-(4-chlorobenzoylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E11): 3-(3,5-Dimethoxybenzoylamino)-5-(4-nitrophenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- 20 (E12): 3-(3-Amino-4-methylbenzoylamino)-5-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E13): 5-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-3-[(pyridine-3-carbonyl)-amino]indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E14): 3-(4-dimethylaminobutylamino)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- 25 (E15): 1-(3-Cyanobenzyl)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(3-phenylacryloylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- (E16): 1-(3-Carbamoylbenzyl)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(3-phenylacryloylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid;
- 30 (E17): 3-Acetylamino-5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(5-phenoxy-pentyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;

(E18): 5-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(2-oxopiperidin-1-yl)-1-(5-phenoxy-pentyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid;

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

5

Another object of the present invention is a compound as defined above for medical use.

10

Another object of the present invention is a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound as defined above together with a pharmaceutical diluent or carrier.

15

Another object of the present invention is a process for preparation of the pharmaceutical composition as defined above by combining a compound as defined above together with a pharmaceutical diluent or carrier.

20

Another object of the present invention is a method for alleviating, preventing, inhibiting, or treating a disease associated with inflammation, pain, or fever by administering to a subject in need of treatment thereof, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

25

Another object of the present invention is a method for alleviating, preventing, inhibiting, or treating a disease, disorders, or condition, which can be modulated by inhibition of mPGES, by administering to a subject in need of treatment thereof, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

30

The diseases, disorders, or conditions referred to comprise inflammatory bowel disease, inflammatory pain, pain, migraine, headache, viral infections (e.g. influenza, common cold, and AIDS), bacterial infections, dysmenorrhea, burns, surgical or dental procedures, atherosclerosis, gout, arthritis, osteoarthritis, juvenile arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, ankylosing spondylitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, vasculitis, pancreatitis, nephritis, bursitis,

conjunctivitis, iritis, scleritis, uveitis, wound healing, dermatitis, eczema, psoriasis, stroke, diabetes, autoimmune diseases, Alzheimers disease, multiple sclerosis, malignancies, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, pulmonary fibrosis, allergic disorders, and rhinitis.

5

Another embodiment of the invention is a method for inhibiting mPGES in a mammal in need thereof, comprising administering to the mammal a therapeutically effective amount of any of the compounds or any of the pharmaceutical compositions described herein.

10

The compounds of the invention are mPGES inhibitors and as such may be useful in the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, migraine, headache, low back pain, fibromyalgia, myofascial disorders, viral infections (*e.g.* influenza, common cold, herpes zoster, and

15

AIDS), bacterial infections, fungal infections, dysmenorrhea, burns, surgical or dental procedures, malignancies (*e.g.* breast cancer, colon cancer, and prostate cancer), atherosclerosis, gout, arthritis, osteoarthritis, juvenile arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, ankylosing spondylitis, systemic lupus

20

erythematosus, vasculitis, pancreatitis, nephritis, bursitis, conjunctivitis, iritis, scleritis, uveitis, wound healing, dermatitis, eczema, psoriasis, stroke, diabetes mellitus; neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimers disease and multiple sclerosis, autoimmune diseases, osteoporosis, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, pulmonary fibrosis, allergic disorders, and rhinitis (alone or in combination with analgesics, anti-inflammatory compounds, antipyretics,

25

antimigrainics, antirheumatics, antitussives, antihyperlipoproteinemics, antiparkinsonians, nootropics, antibacterials, antivirals, antimycotica, antiallergics, nitric oxide releasing drugs, immunomodulators, immunosuppressants, cytostatica, chemotherapy, and hormone therapy).

30

Another object of the present invention is a method for eliciting a mPGES modulating effect in a subject in need of treatment, which comprises

administering to the subject of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

5 The compounds of the present invention in labelled form, *e. g.* isotopically labelled, may be used as diagnostic agents.

10 Another object of the present invention is the use of a compound of formula (I) in the manufacture of a medicament for the therapeutic alleviation, treatment or prevention of a disease, disorder, or condition, which is associated with mPGES in a subject in need thereof.

15 Examples of such diseases and disorders are inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, migraine, headache, low back pain, fibromyalgia, myofascial disorders, viral infections (*e.g.* influenza, common cold, herpes zoster, and AIDS), bacterial infections, fungal infections, dysmenorrhea, burns, surgical or dental procedures, malignancies (*e.g.* breast cancer, colon cancer, and prostate cancer), atherosclerosis, gout, arthritis, osteoarthritis, juvenile arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, ankylosing spondylitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, vasculitis, pancreatitis, nephritis, bursitis, conjunctivitis, 20 iritis, scleritis, uveitis, wound healing, dermatitis, eczema, psoriasis, stroke, diabetes mellitus; neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimers disease and multiple sclerosis, autoimmune diseases, osteoporosis, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, pulmonary fibrosis, allergic disorders, and rhinitis.

25

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

30 The following definitions apply to the terms as used throughout this specification, unless otherwise limited in specific instances. All publications mentioned herein are hereby incorporated by reference.

The expressions "comprise" and "comprising" mean "including but not limited to".

5 The term "mPGES inhibitor" as used herein is intended to cover any moiety that prevents the action of the mPGES enzyme, or a complex of which the mPGES enzyme forms a part.

The term "subject" as used herein refers to a patient, which may *e.g.* be a mammal including human beings.

10

The term "effective amount" refers to an amount of a compound, which confers a therapeutic effect on the treated subject. The therapeutic effect may be objective (*i.e.* measurable by some test or marker) or subjective (*i.e.* the subject gives an indication of or feels an effect).

15

The term "spacer", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to a group that connects one residue to another. Exemplary spacers include, but are not restricted to, optionally substituted alkylene or heteroalkylene chains.

20 The term "halogen", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to chlorine, bromine, fluorine, and iodine.

The term "heteroatom" as used herein, refers to nitrogen, oxygen, sulphur, and in heterocyclic rings, also selenium.

25

The term "C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to an alkyl group which may be straight or branched. Exemplary C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl groups include, but are not restricted to, methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, *n*-pentyl, isopentyl, *n*-hexyl, and isohexyl.

30

The term "C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to a mono-, or bicyclic alkyl group, which may contain one or more



- unsaturations (double, and/or triple bonds). Exemplary  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl groups include, but are not restricted to, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclooctynyl, bicycloheptyl, bicyclooctyl, and bicyclooctenyl. It is understood that a single carbon of the  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl may be common to another  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, forming a so called spiro-compound. It is also understood that a single carbon of the  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl may be common to a carbon in *e.g.* an alkylgroup.
- 10 The term " $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to an alkenyl group which may be straight or branched. Exemplary  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl groups include, but are not restricted to, vinyl, 1-propenyl, 2-propenyl, propadienyl, 1-butenyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 1,3-butadienyl, 1-pentenyl, 2-pentenyl, 4-pentenyl, and 5-hexenyl.
- 15 The term " $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to an alkynyl group which may be straight or branched. Exemplary  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl groups include, but are not restricted to, ethynyl, 1-propynyl, 2-propynyl, 1-butylnyl, 2-butylnyl, 3-butylnyl, 1-pentylnyl, 2-butylnyl, 4-pentylnyl, 1-hexynyl, 3-hexynyl, and 5-hexynyl.
- 20 The term " $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to a mono-, or bicyclic alkyl group which may contain one or more heteroatoms, and which may contain one or more unsaturations (double, and/or triple bonds). Exemplary  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl groups include, but are not restricted to, aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, pyrroline, piperidine, tetrahydropyridine, dihydropyridine, pyrazolidine, imidazolidine, imidazoline, piperazine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, oxirane, oxetane, tetrahydrofuran, pyran, dihydropyran, tetrahydropyran, 1,3-dioxolane, 1,3-dioxane, 1,4-dioxane, thiirane, thietane, thiolane, 1,3-dithiolane, 1,4-dithiane, 1,3,5-trithiane, quinuclidine, and tropane. It is understood that a single carbon or nitrogen of the  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl may be common to another  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -
- 25  
30

heterocycloalkyl-group, forming a so called spiro-compound. It is also understood that a single carbon or nitrogen of the  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl may be common to a carbon or nitrogen in e.g. an alkylgroup.

- 5 The term "aryl" is intended to include monocyclic or bicyclic ring systems having from 6 to 10 ring carbon atoms, in which at least one ring is aromatic. Examples of such ring systems are benzene, naphthalene, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene, indan, and indene.
- 10 The term "heteroaryl" refers to a mono-, bi- or tricyclic ring system having from 5 to 10 ring atoms, in which at least one ring is aromatic, and in which one or more of the ring atoms are other than carbon, such as nitrogen, sulphur, oxygen and selenium. Examples of such heteroaryl rings include, but are not restricted to, pyrrole, furan, thiophene, pyrazole, imidazole, oxazole, isoxazole,
- 15 thiazole, isothiazole, 1,2,3-triazole, 1,2,4-triazole, 1,3,4-triazole, 1,2,3-oxadiazole, 1,2,4-oxadiazole, 1,3,4-oxadiazole, 1,2,3-thiadiazole, 1,2,4-thiadiazole, 1,3,4-thiadiazole, tetrazole, pyridine, indole, isoindole, indoline, isoindoline, quinoline, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, isoquinoline, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline, quinolizine, carbazole, acridine, benzofuran,
- 20 isobenzofuran, chroman, isochroman, benzothiophene, pyridazine, pyrimidine, pyrazine, indazole, benzimidazole, cinnoline, quinazoline, quinoxaline, phthalazine, 1,5-naphthyridine, 1,8-naphthyridine, phenazine, benzoxazole, 3,4-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzoxazine, benzothiazole, phenothiazine, 1,3-benzodioxole, benzodioxane, 2,1,3-benzoxadiazole, 2,1,3-benzothiazole, 2,1,3-benzoselenadiazole, purine, and pteridine. The ring system may be linked to the rest of the molecule via a carbon or nitrogen atom thereof.

The term " $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to an alkyl chain of 1 to 8 carbon atoms which is substituted at

- 30 each end and includes methylene ( $-CH_2-$ ), ethylene ( $-CH_2CH_2-$ ),  $-CH_2CH_2CH_2-$ ,  $-CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2-$ ,  $-CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2-$ ,  $-CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2-$ , and



- The term "heteroalkylene chain", as used herein alone or as part of another group, refers to a C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkylene chain, as defined above, where one or more
- 5 carbons are substituted by heteroatoms. Exemplary heteroalkylene chains include, but are not restricted to:  $-\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ ,  $-\text{NHCH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ ,  $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{S}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{S}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{S}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{S}-$ , and  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}-$ .
- 10
- 15
- 20

The compounds of formula (I) in the invention may contain at least one chiral center and may therefore exist as optical isomers. The invention therefore

25 comprises optically inactive racemic (*rac*) mixtures (a one to one mixture of enantiomers), optically enriched (scalemic) mixtures as well as optically pure individual enantiomers. The compounds in the invention also may contain more than one chiral center and therefore may exist as diastereomers. The invention

30 therefore comprises individual diastereomers as well as any mixture of diastereomers.

The compound of formula (I) in the invention may contain geometrical isomers and may therefore exist as either the *E* (entgegen) or *Z* (zusammen) isomers. The invention therefore comprises individual *E* or *Z* isomers as well as any mixture of *E* and *Z* isomers.

5

The compound of formula (I) in the invention may exist in tautomeric forms; the invention therefore comprises the individual tautomeric forms as well as any mixture thereof.

- 10 Also included within the scope of the invention are polymorphs, hydrates, and solvates of the compounds of the instant invention.

The compounds of formula (I) can be present as salts, in particular pharmaceutically acceptable salts. The term "Pharmaceutically Acceptable

- 15 Salts" refers to salts prepared from pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic bases or acids including inorganic or organic bases and inorganic or organic acids.

Salts derived from inorganic bases include aluminium, ammonium, calcium, copper, ferric, ferrous, lithium, magnesium, manganic salts, manganous, potassium, sodium, zinc salts, and the like. Particularly preferred are the

- 20 ammonium, calcium, magnesium, potassium, and sodium salts. Salts derived from pharmaceutically acceptable organic non-toxic bases include salts of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines, substituted amines including naturally occurring substituted amines, cyclic amines, and basic ion exchange resins, such as arginine, betaine, caffeine, choline, *N,N'*-dibenzylethylenediamine,

- 25 diethylamine, 2-diethylaminoethanol, 2-dimethylaminoethanol, ethanolamine, ethylenediamine, *N*-ethylmorpholine, *N*-ethylpiperidine, glucamine, glucosamine, histidine, hydrabamine, isopropylamine, lysine, methylglucamine, morpholine, piperazine, piperidine, polyamine resins, procaine, purines,

- 30 theobromine, triethylamine, trimethylamine, tripropylamine, tromethamine, and the like. When the compound of this invention is basic, salts may be prepared from pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic acids, including inorganic and organic acids. Such acids include, but are not restricted to, acetic,

benzenesulfonic, benzoic, camphorsulfonic, citric, ethanesulfonic, fumaric, gluconic, glutamic, hydrobromic, hydrochloric, isethionic, lactic, maleic, malic, malonic, mandelic, methanesulfonic, mucic, nitric, pamoic, panthothenic, phosphoric, succinic, sulfuric, tartaric, and p-toluenesulfonic acid. Particularly preferred are citric, hydrobromic, hydrochloric, maleic, nitric, phosphoric, sulfuric, and tartaric acids. Salts in the solid form may exist in more than one crystal structure, and may also be in the form of solvates such as hydrates.

The present invention includes within its scope prodrugs of the compounds of this invention. In general, such prodrugs will be functional derivatives of the compounds of this invention which are readily convertible *in vivo* into the required compound. Thus, in the methods of treatment of the present invention, the term "administering" shall encompass the treatment of the various conditions described with the compound specifically disclosed or with a compound which may not be specifically disclosed, but which converts to the specified compound *in vivo* after administration to the patient. Conventional procedures for the selection and preparation of suitable prodrug derivatives are described, for example in "Design of Prodrugs" ed. H. Bundgaard, Elsevier, 1985, which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

20

The present invention includes within its scope metabolites of compounds of formula (I). Metabolites of the compounds include active species produced upon introduction of compounds of this invention into the biological milieu.

25 The present invention includes within its scope compounds of formula (I) in an isotopically labeled form.

The compounds of the present invention can be administered in such oral dosage forms as tablets, capsules (each of which includes sustained release or timed release formulations), pills, powder, granules, elixirs, tinctures, suspensions, syrups and emulsions. Likewise, they may also be administered in intravenous (bolus or infusion), intraperitoneal, topical (*e.g.* ocular eyedrop),

30

subcutaneous, intramuscular, intraspinal, epidural, intranasal, buccal, or transdermal form, all using forms well known to those of ordinary skill in the pharmaceutical arts.

- 5 The dosage regimen utilizing the compounds of the present invention is selected in accordance with a variety of factors including type, species, age, weight, sex, and medical condition of the patient; the severity of the condition to be treated; the route of administration; the renal and hepatic function of the patient; and the particular compound or salt thereof employed. An ordinarily  
10 skilled physician, veterinarian or clinician can readily determine and prescribe the effective amount of the drug required to prevent, counter or arrest the progress of the condition.

- Oral dosages of the present invention, when used for the indicated effects, will  
15 range between about 0.01 mg per kg of body weight per day (mg/kg/day) to about 100 mg/kg/day, preferably 0.01 mg per kg of body weight per day (mg/kg/day) to 10 mg/kg/day, and most preferably 0.1 to 5.0 mg/kg/day. For oral administration, the compositions are preferably provided in the form of tablets containing 0.01, 0.05, 0.1, 0.5, 1.0, 2.5, 5.0, 10.0, 15.0, 25.0, 50.0, 100,  
20 or 500 milligrams of the active ingredient for the symptomatic adjustment of the dosage to the patient to be treated. A medicament typically contains from about 0.01 mg to about 500 mg of the active ingredient, preferably from about 1 mg to about 100 mg of active ingredient. Intravenously, the most preferred doses will range from about 0.1 to about 10 mg/kg/minute during a constant rate infusion. Advantageously, compounds of the present invention may be  
25 administered in a single daily dose, or the total daily dosage may be administered in divided doses of two, three or four times daily. Furthermore, preferred compounds for the present invention can be administered in intranasal form *via* topical use of suitable intranasal vehicles, or *via* transdermal routes,  
30 using those forms of transdermal skin patches or iontophoretic devices well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. To be administered in the form of a

transdermal delivery system, the dosage administration will, of course, be continuous rather than intermittent throughout the dosage regimen.

In the methods of the present invention, the compounds herein described in  
5 detail can form the active ingredient, and are typically administered in  
admixture with suitable pharmaceutical diluents, excipients or carriers  
(collectively referred to herein as "carrier" materials) suitably selected with  
respect to the intended form of administration, that is, oral tablets, capsules,  
elixirs, syrups and the like, and consistent with conventional pharmaceutical  
10 practices.

For instance, for oral administration in the form of a tablet or capsule, the active  
drug component can be combined with an oral, non-toxic, pharmaceutically  
acceptable, inert carrier such as lactose, starch, sucrose, glucose, colloidal  
15 silicon dioxide, microcrystalline cellulose, methyl cellulose, sodium starch  
glycolate, magnesium stearate, calcium hydrogen phosphate, dicalcium  
phosphate, calcium sulfate, mannitol, sorbitol, and the like; for oral  
administration in liquid form, the oral drug components can be combined with  
any oral, non-toxic, pharmaceutically acceptable inert carrier such as ethanol,  
20 glycerol, water, and the like. Moreover, when desired or necessary, suitable  
binders, lubricants, disintegrating agents and coloring agents can also be  
incorporated into the mixture. Suitable binders include starch, gelatin, natural  
sugars such as glucose or beta-lactose, corn sweeteners, natural and synthetic  
gums such as acacia, tragacanth or sodium alginate, carboxymethylcellulose,  
25 polyethylene glycol, waxes, and the like. Lubricants used in these dosage forms  
include sodium oleate, sodium stearate, magnesium stearate, sodium benzoate,  
sodium acetate, sodium chloride, and the like. Disintegrators include without  
limitation starch, methylcellulose, agar, bentonite, xanthan gum, and the like.

30 The compounds of the present invention can also be administered in the form of  
liposome delivery systems, such as small unilamellar vesicles, large unilamellar

vesicles and multilamellar vesicles. Liposomes can be formed from *e. g.* phospholipids, cholesterol, stearylamine, or phosphatidylcholines.

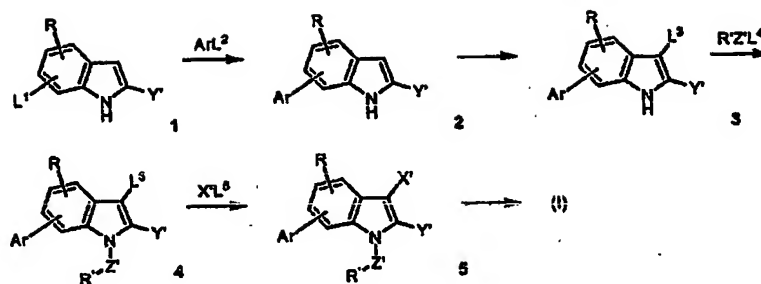
The compounds of formula (I) may be prepared by the exemplary processes described in the following reaction schemes. Exemplary reagents and procedures for these reactions appear hereinafter and in the working Examples.

Scheme 1 describes a synthetic route that begins with a coupling reaction between an appropriately substituted indole 1, and a reagent containing an aromatic residue Ar, giving the intermediate 2. The leaving group L<sup>1</sup> on compound 1 is *e.g.* chloro, bromo, iodo, CF<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>O-, (HO)<sub>2</sub>B-, 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl, Bu<sub>3</sub>Sn-, or a similar group known to those skilled in the art. The leaving group L<sup>2</sup> on ArL<sup>2</sup> is *e.g.* chloro, bromo, iodo, CF<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>O-, (HO)<sub>2</sub>B-, 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl, Bu<sub>3</sub>Sn-, or a similar group known to those skilled in the art. It is understood that L<sup>1</sup> and L<sup>2</sup> are selected based on their mutual compatibility. The coupling reaction is preferably catalyzed by a mixture that may contain a metal, or a salt or complex thereof, such as CuI, Pd on carbon, Pd(OAc)<sub>2</sub>, Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub>, or NiCl<sub>2</sub>, a ligand such as *t*-Bu<sub>3</sub>P, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>11</sub>)<sub>3</sub>P, Ph<sub>3</sub>P, 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)-ethane, 2,2'-bis(di-*tert*-butylphosphino)-1,1'-biphenyl or 2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl, and a base such as, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, or *t*-BuOK, or another mixture known to those skilled in the art. A leaving group L<sup>3</sup>, such as bromo, iodo, or a similar group known to those skilled in the art, is introduced into 2 by a reagent, *e.g.* *N*-bromosuccinimide, iodine, or a mixture of NaI and *N*-chlorosuccinimide, affording the intermediate 3. The substituent in the indolic 1-position is introduced into 3 using a reagent R'Z'L<sup>4</sup> which affords compound 4. The leaving group L<sup>4</sup> is *e.g.* chloro, bromo, iodo, CF<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>O-, TsO-, or a similar group known to those skilled in the art. The reaction is preferably performed in the presence of a base such as K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, NaH, LDA, Et<sub>3</sub>N, DMAP/pyridine, or a similar reagent known to those skilled in the art. Compound 5 is formed by introducing the substituent X' on 4. If X' is an aromatic group, L<sup>5</sup> is (HO)<sub>2</sub>B-, 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl,



- Bu<sub>3</sub>Sn-, or a similar group known to those skilled in the art. It is understood that L<sup>5</sup> and X' are selected based on their mutual compatibility. The reaction is preferably catalyzed by a mixture that may contain a transition metal, or a salt or complex thereof, such as CuI, Pd on carbon, Pd(OAc)<sub>2</sub>, Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub>, or NiCl<sub>2</sub>, a ligand such as, *t*-Bu<sub>3</sub>P, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>11</sub>)<sub>3</sub>P, Ph<sub>3</sub>P, 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane, 2,2'-bis(di-*tert*-butylphosphino)-1,1'-biphenyl or 2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl, and a base such as Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, or *t*-BuOK, or another mixture known to those skilled in the art. If X' is an amide group, L<sup>5</sup> is H, and the reaction is preferably performed in the presence of a system that may contain a metal, or a salt or complex thereof, such as Cu, Cu(OAc)<sub>2</sub>, CuI, Pd(OAc)<sub>2</sub>, or NiCl<sub>2</sub>, an additive such as, Et<sub>3</sub>N, pyridine, N,N'-dimethylethylenediamine, Ph<sub>3</sub>P, or 2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl, and a base such as Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, or *t*-BuOK, or another mixture known to those skilled in the art.
- Finally, compound 5 is transformed in one or several synthetic steps to compound of formula (I) of the present invention. These transformations include, if necessary, the changing of the precursor groups Ar and/or R to R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, and/or R<sup>5</sup> as defined in formula (I) and/or the changing of the precursor groups X', Y', Z', and/or R' to X, Y, Z, and/or R<sup>1</sup>, respectively, as defined in formula (I). A precursor group may also be changed to a different such group. An exemplary transformation is the hydrolysis of an ester to an acid (e.g. Y' = -COOalkyl to Y' = -COOH). Other examples of methods used in the transformations comprise substitutions, reductions, oxidations, alkylations, esterifications, and etherifications. The precursor groups can be changed to a different such group, or to the groups defined in formula (I), at any time during the reaction sequence.

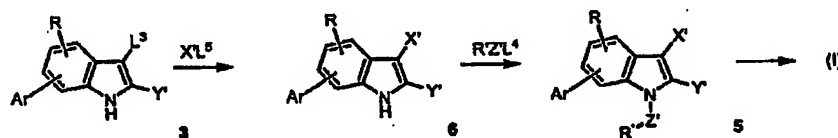
Scheme 1.



It is also understood that the various groups that are introduced onto the indole nucleus not necessarily need to be added in the order described in Scheme 1.

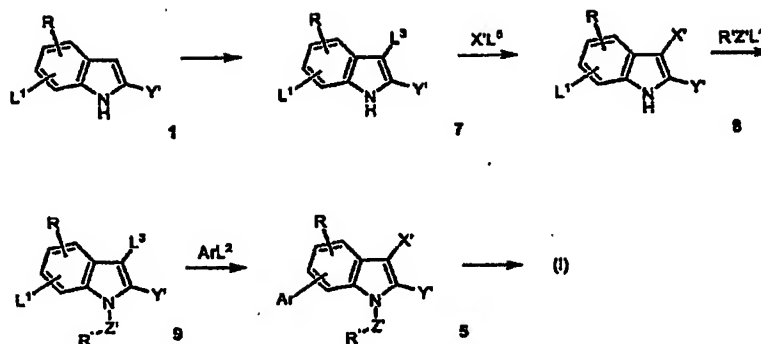
Thus, Scheme 2 depicts a route where the substituent in the 3-position of the indole is introduced before the 1-substituent. The synthetic procedures are the same as described before. Also as previously described, the precursor groups can be changed to a different such group, or to the groups defined in formula (I), at any time during the reaction sequence.

#### 10 Scheme 2.



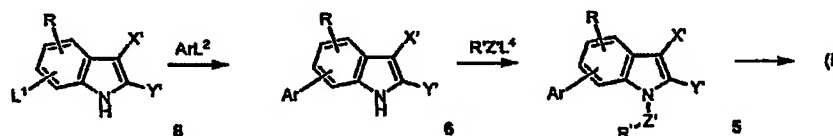
Scheme 3 describes a synthesis in which the substituent in the indolic 3-position is introduced first, followed by the substituents in the 1-position. The aromatic residue in 4-, 5-, 6-, or the 7-position is introduced last. The synthetic procedures are the same as described before. Also as previously described, the precursor groups can be changed to a different such group, or to the groups defined in formula (I), at any time during the reaction sequence.

#### 20 Scheme 3.



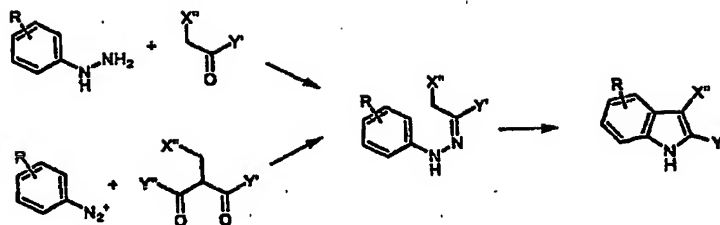
Another reaction sequence is described in Scheme 4. The synthetic procedures are the same as described before. Also as previously described, the precursor groups can be changed to a different such group, or to the groups defined in formula (I), at any time during the reaction sequence.

Scheme 4.



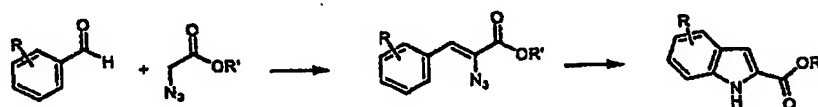
- Compound 1 which is the starting material in the sequences described in Schemes 1 to 4, are either commercially available or synthesized by routes known to those skilled in the art. One such reaction is the Fischer indole synthesis (Scheme 5). This reaction can be used for the synthesis of indoles unsubstituted in their 3-positions ( $X'' = H$ ) or compounds where there is a substituent in the indolic 3-position, such as compounds 6 and 8 ( $X'' = X'$ ), and for certain compounds covered by structure 5 (*i.e.* when the indole nitrogen is alkylated, but not acylated). The intermediate in the Fischer indole synthesis is a hydrazone which preferably is prepared from the corresponding ketone and an appropriately substituted phenyl hydrazine, or by the Japp-Klingemann reaction, from an appropriately substituted phenyldiazonium salt and a malonic acid derivative ( $Y''$  is  $-COOH$  or  $-COOalkyl$ ) or a  $\beta$ -ketoester ( $Y''$  is  $-C(O)alkyl$ ).

Scheme 5.



Another useful route to appropriately substituted indolic intermediates is the Hemetsberger synthesis, which is well known to those skilled in the art (Scheme 6). The reaction is based on the condensation of an appropriately substituted benzaldehyde with an azidoacetic acid ester, followed by a thermally induced cyclization.

Scheme 6.

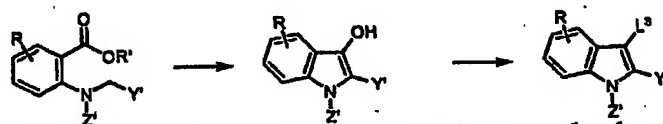


There are numerous alternative procedures for the synthesis of appropriately substituted indolic intermediates. For example, the precursor group Y', or the residue Y defined as above, can be introduced into an indolic compound unsubstituted in the 2-position. Those synthetic procedures are well known to those skilled in the art.

Yet another route to indoles, known to those skilled in the art, with a useful group in the 3-position, is depicted in Scheme 7. The scheme describes a reaction where an appropriately substituted anthranilic acid derivative is made to undergo an intramolecular condensation. The hydroxy group in the indolic 3-position is converted by methods known to those skilled in the art to a leaving group (*e.g.* to a triflate), which can be substituted by an aromatic, or an amide residue as described before. Also, reductive amination of the 3-hydroxy indole (which is the tautomer of an indoxyl) gives a compound where L<sup>3</sup> is an amine. Z' in the compounds of Scheme 7 is either hydrogen, protective groups,

precursor groups or groups which belong to the compounds described by formula (I) of the present invention.

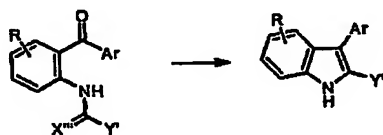
5 Scheme 7.



An indole with an aromatic residue in the 3-position can also be made directly by an intramolecular condensation or intramolecular reductive coupling of an appropriately substituted 2-aminobenzophenone intermediate (Scheme 8).

- 10 When  $X'''$  is H/H the reaction is a base induced condensation. When  $X'''$  is O the cyclization is induced by  $TiCl_3/C_3K$ ,  $TiCl_4/Zn$ ,  $SmI_2$  or similar reagents known to those skilled in the art.

Scheme 8.

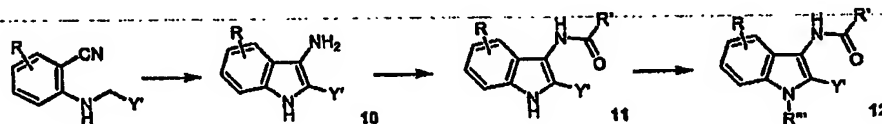


15

Indoles with a 3-amino group can be made by an intramolecular condensation of an appropriately substituted anthralinonitrile (Scheme 9). The amino group in compound 10 can then be acylated, by methods known to those skilled in the art, to give 11. Alkylation or acylation on the indole nitrogen, by methods

- 20 known to those skilled in the art, finally gives structure 12.

Scheme 9.



Alternative routes to the one described in Scheme 9 is depicted in Scheme 10.

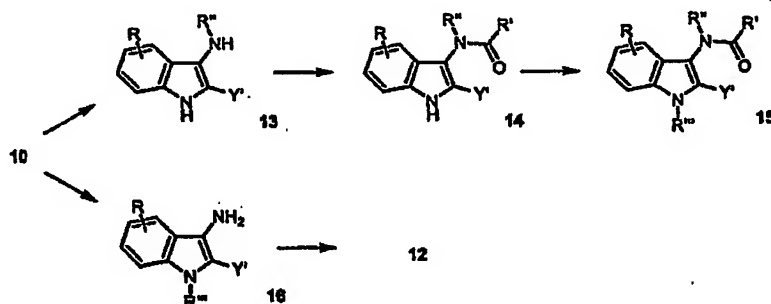
- 25 Alkylation of compound 10 gives 13 which can be acylated to 14 which in turn

is alkylated or acylated to afford 15. Compound 10 can also be alkylated or acylated on the indole nitrogen to afford compound 16 which finally is converted to 12. Yet another variation is depicted in Scheme 11. In this case the amino group in the anthranilonitrile carries a group, Z', that can be either a

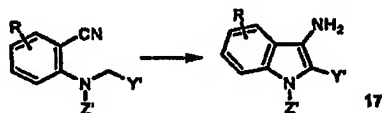
5 protective group, precursor group or group which belongs to the compounds described by formula (I) of the present invention. If the Z' group in 17 is a protective group it can be removed, by methods known to those skilled in the art, which affords compound 10. The 3-amino group in the indole 17 may be

10 alkylated or acylated as described above.

Scheme 10.



Scheme 11.



15 It is also understood that 3-amino residues can be introduced in 3-unsubstituted indoles by methods known to those skilled in the art, *e.g.* by nitration followed by reduction. Rearrangements of *e.g.* indole-3-carboxamides could also furnish 3-aminoindoles or derivatives thereof.

20 As explained before, the precursor groups R, R', R'', R''', X'', Y' and Z', in Schemes 5 to 10 may at any time during the reaction sequence be changed to a different such group, or to a corresponding group defined in formula (I).

Those skilled in the art will readily understand that known variations of the processes described herein and of the experimental conditions, such as solvents, temperatures and times, of the following preparative procedures, can be used to prepare compounds of formula (I) of the present invention.

5

The present invention will now be described with reference to the following Examples. These Examples are not to be regarded as limiting of the scope of the present invention, but shall only serve in an illustrative manner.

10

### EXAMPLES

The following abbreviations are used in the examples:

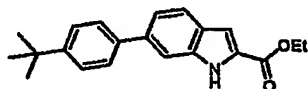
	DMAP	4-dimethylaminopyridine
15	DMF	dimethylformamide
	DMSO	dimethylsulfoxide
	EtOAc	ethyl acetate
	HPLC	High Pressure Liquid Chromatography
	MeCN	acetonitrile
20	MS	Mass spectrum
	NMR	Nuclear Magnetic Resonance
	TFA	trifluoroacetic acid
	THF	tetrahydrofuran

25 Chemicals specified in the synthesis of the compounds in the examples were commercially available from, e.g. Sigma-Aldrich Fine Chemicals or prepared according to known literature procedures.

**Example 1. 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid (E1).**

**Step 1.**

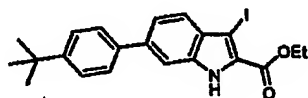
**5 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.**



A mixture of 6-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (400 mg, 1.5 mmol), 4-*tert*-butylphenylboronic acid (400 mg, 2.25 mmol), K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> (950 mg, 1.5 mmol), Pd(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (18 mg, 0.075 mmol), 2,2'-bis(di-*tert*-butylphosphino)-1,1'-biphenyl (45 mg, 0.15 mmol), and toluene (9 mL) was stirred in an argon atmosphere for 30 min at room temperature, and at 100 °C for 40 min using micro-wave irradiation. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and poured into NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (aq., sat, 20 mL). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x20 mL) and the combined extracts were washed with water (60 mL), brine (60 mL) and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Concentration and purification by chromatography gave the title compound (392 mg, 81%).

**Step 2.**

**20 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-3-iodoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.**



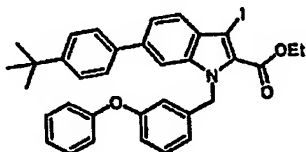
The reaction was performed with the exclusion of light. A solution of NaI (300 mg, 2.0 mmol) in acetone (15 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of *N*-chlorosuccinimide (270 mg, 2.0 mmol) in acetone (4 mL), followed after 15 min by the dropwise addition of 6-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (650 mg, 2.0 mmol) in acetone (20 mL). After 30 min at room temperature the mixture was poured into an aqueous solution of Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> (10%, 40 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x50 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (100 mL), brine (75 mL) and dried over



$\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Concentration and purification by chromatography gave the title compound (743 mg, 82%) as a brownish solid that was used without any further purification.

5 Step 3.

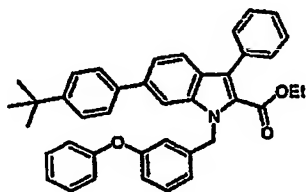
6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-3-iodo-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.



- 10 A solution of 6-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-3-iodoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (743 mg, 1.66 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added carefully to a stirred suspension of NaH (41 mg, 1.69 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) at 0 °C and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 25 min. A solution of 3-phenoxybenzyl-chloride (378 mg, 1.69 mmol) in DMF (6 mL) was added in portions and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 h, poured into water (40 mL)
- 15 and extracted with *t*-BuOMe (3x50 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (100 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Concentration, chromatography and crystallization from EtOH gave the title compound (766 mg, 73%).

## Step 4.

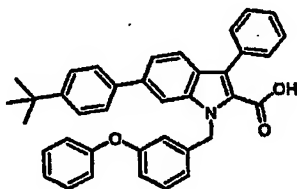
6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.



- 5 A mixture of 6-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-3-iodo-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (200 mg, 0.32 mmol), phenylboronic acid (59 mg, 0.48 mmol),  $K_3PO_4$  (238 mg, 1.12 mmol),  $Pd(OAc)_2$  (3.6 mg, 0.016 mmol) and toluene (3 mL) was stirred for 20 min at room temperature and for 4h at 80 °C. The mixture was poured into  $NaHCO_3$  (aq., sat, 30 mL) and extracted with
- 10 EtOAc (3x20 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (30 mL), brine (25 mL) and dried over  $Na_2SO_4$ . Concentration and purification by chromatography gave the title compound (163 mg, 88%).

## Step5.

- 15 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid.



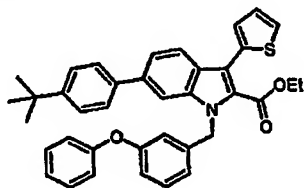
- A mixture of 6-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (163 mg, 0.281 mmol), aqueous NaOH (1 M, 10 mL) and MeCN (40 mL) was heated at reflux for 4 h, allowed to cool, acidified
- 20 with 1M HCl to pH 2 and extracted with EtOAc (3x20 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (50 mL), brine (50 mL) and dried over  $Na_2SO_4$ . Concentration, purification by chromatography, and recrystallization from EtOH and from MeCN gave the title compound (95 mg, 61%).  $^1H$  NMR
- 25 (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  7.61-7.37 (12H, m), 7.29-7.17 (3H, m), 7.09-7.00 (1H,

m), 6.97-6.90 (2H, m), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=2.0$  Hz), 6.83-6.77 (2H, m), 5.86 (2H, s), 1.37 (9H, s).

5 Example 2. 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-(2-thienyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E2).

Step 1.

6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-(2-thienyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.



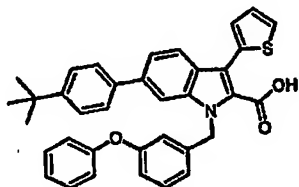
10

2-(Tributylstannyl)thiophene (72 mg, 0.20 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of 6-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-3-iodo-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (150 mg, 0.24 mmol, prepared according to Step 4, Example 1), CuI (25 mg, 0.13 mmol), Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (18 mg, 0.026 mmol) and  
15 DMF (3 mL). After 10 min at room temperature and 1h at 90 °C another portion of 2-(tributylstannyl)thiophene (72 mg, 0.20 mmol) was added and the heating was continued for 3h. The mixture was filtered through Celite® and the solids were washed with EtOAc (100 mL). Concentration and purification by chromatography gave the title compound (125 mg, 90%).

20

## Step 2.

6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-(2-thienyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.



5

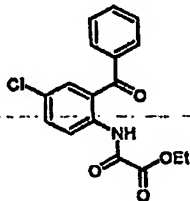
A mixture of 6-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (125 mg, 0.213 mmol), aqueous KOH (2 M, 2 mL) and MeCN (6 mL) was heated using micro-wave irradiation for 30 min at 130 °C. The mixture was acidified with 1M HCl to pH 2 and extracted with EtOAc (4x20 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (50 mL), brine (50 mL) and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Concentration and purification by chromatography gave the title compound (91 mg, 77%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 7.75 (1H, d, *J*=8.4 Hz), 7.56-7.45 (6H, m), 7.44 (1H, dd, *J*=4.0, 1.4 Hz), 7.30-7.15 (5H, m), 7.09-7.03 (1H, m), 6.98-6.90 (2H, m), 6.86-6.79 (3H, m), 5.86 (2H, s), 1.37 (9H, s).

15

Example 3. 5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E3).

## 20 Step 1.

*N*-(2-Benzoyl-4-chlorophenyl)oxalamic acid ethyl ester.



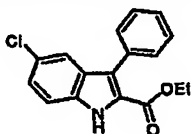
A mixture of 2-amino-5-chlorobenzophenone (11.6 g, 50 mmol), ethyl oxalylchloride (6.8 g, 50 mmol) and toluene (70 mL) was heated at reflux for 1.5 h. On cooling a yellow precipitate formed. EtOAc (250 mL) was added and the solution

25

was washed with  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (5%, 100 ml),  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  (5%, 100 ml), brine (100 mL) and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Concentration gave the title compound (15.5g, 94%).

Step 2.

- 5 5-Chloro-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.

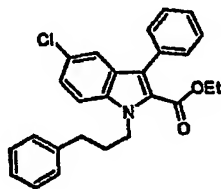


- 10  $\text{TiCl}_4$  in THF (0.25 M, 19.5 mL, 54.9 mmol) was added slowly to a stirred mixture of *N*-(2-benzoyl-4-chlorophenyl)oxalamic acid ethyl ester (8.88 g, 26.8 mmol), Zn (7.19 g, 110 mmol) and THF (60 mL) at room temperature. After 2h silica gel was added and after another 30 min the mixture was filtered through a pad of silica gel which was washed with EtOAc (300 mL). The combined filtrates were washed with  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (5%, 300 ml), water (300 ml), brine (100 mL) and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Concentration and crystallization of the residue from  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and petroleum ether gave the title compound (3.13g, 39%).

15

Step 3.

- 5-Chloro-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.

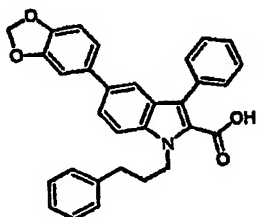


- 20 NaH (60 % dispersion in mineral oil, 0.25 g, 6.2 mmol) was washed with hexane (2x1mL) and  $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$  (1 mL) and suspended in DMF (1 mL). A solution of 5-chloro-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (1.55 g, 5.17 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added carefully at 0 °C and the mixture was stirred for 20 min. A solution of (3-bromopropyl)-benzene (1.54 g, 7.75 mmol) in DMF (3mL) was added carefully at 0 °C. The cooling bath was removed and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h, poured into water (200 mL), and extracted with EtOAc (150 mL). The extract was washed with water (2x50
- 25

mL), brine (150 mL) and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Concentration and chromatography gave the title compound (1.66 g, 77%).

Step 4.

- 5 5-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid.



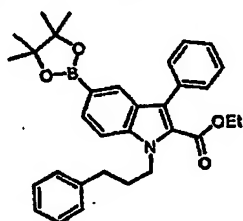
- 10 The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 1, Step 1, from 5-chloro-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester and 3,4-methylenedioxyphenylboronic acid, followed by hydrolysis according to Example 2, Step 2.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 200 MHz):  $\delta$  7.61-7.38 (8H, m), 7.36-7.15 (5H, m), 7.04 (1H, s), 7.02 (1H, dd,  $J=8.5$ , 1.8 Hz), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=8.5$  Hz), 5.98 (2H, s), 4.67-4.55 (2H, m), 2.75 (2H, t,  $J=7.6$  Hz), 2.31-2.12 (2H, m).

15

Example 4. 3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(3-pyridinyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E4).

Step 1.

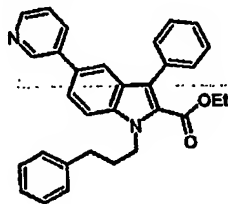
- 5 3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.



- A 0.01 M stock solution of a  $\text{Pd}/(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})_3\text{P}$  was prepared from  $\text{Pd}_2\text{dba}_3$ , (0.457 g, 0.5 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphine (0.841 g, 3 mmol) and dioxane (100 mL). An aliquot of this stock solution (12.5 mL, 0.125 mmol Pd), 5-chloro-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (1.05 g, 2.5 mmol) prepared according to Example 3, Step 3, bis(pinacolato)diboron (0.762 g, 3.0 mmol), KOAc (0.44 g, 4.5 mmol), and dioxane (25 mL) was heated at 80 °C for 16 h. Another aliquot of the  $\text{Pd}/(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})_3\text{P}$  reagent (2.5 mL, 0.025 mmol Pd) was added and the mixture was heated at 100 °C for 24 h. The mixture was filtered through Celite®, and the filtrate was concentrated and purified by chromatography to give the title compound (0.47 g, 37 %) together with 0.55 g recovered starting material.

20 Step 2.

3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(3-pyridinyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.

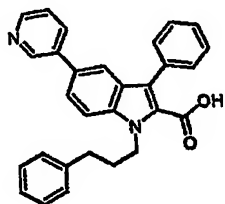


3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (0.40 g, 91 mmol), 3-iodopyridine (0.28 g,

1.37 mmol), aqueous  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  (2M, 0.46 mL, 0.91 mmol),  $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$  (53 mg, 46  $\mu\text{mol}$ ), toluene (7.3 mL), and EtOH (1.8 mL) was heated at 80 °C for 16 h. More 3-iodopyridine (0.19 g, 0.91 mmol), aqueous  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  (2M, 1.4 mL, 2.73 mmol), and  $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$  (23 mg, 20  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) were added and the mixture was  
5 heated for another 8h. EtOAc (30 mL) and brine (30 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was washed with EtOAc (30 mL). The combined organic phases were dried with brine (30 mL) and  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Concentration and chromatography gave the title compound (0.32 g, 76%).

10 Step 3.

3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(3-pyridinyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid

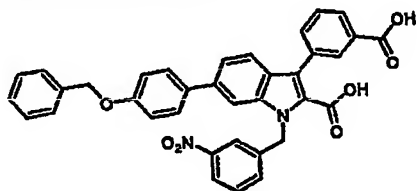


The title compound was prepared from 3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(3-pyridinyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester according to the procedure in

15 Example 2, Step 2.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 200 MHz):  $\delta$  8.78 (1H, s), 8.52 (1H, d,  $J=4.2$  Hz), 7.92 (1H, d,  $J=8.0$  Hz), 7.65-7.71 (1H, m), 7.59-7.13 (13H, m), 4.71-4.58 (2H, m), 2.75 (2H, t,  $J=7.6$  Hz), 2.32-2.17 (2H, m).

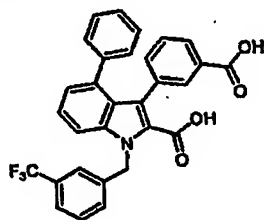


**Example 5. 6-(4-Benzyloxyphenyl)-3-(3-carboxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid (E5).**



- The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 1 from 4-benzyloxyphenylboronic acid, 3-nitrobenzylbromide and 3-carboxyphenylboronic acid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 13.02 (2H, s), 8.13-7.94 (5H, m), 7.75 (1H, ddd, J=7.6, 1.5, 1.5 Hz), 7.63 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 2.0 Hz), 7.59-7.27 (12H, m), 7.04-6.97 (1H, m), 6.12 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s).

**Example 6. 3-(3-Carboxyphenyl)-4-phenyl-1-(3-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E6).**

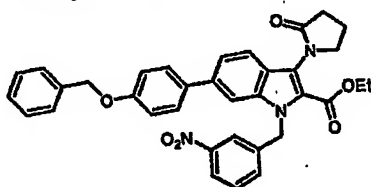


- The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 1 from 4-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, phenylboronic acid, 3-trifluoromethylbenzylbromide and 3-carboxyphenylboronic acid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz): δ 7.79 (1H, dd, J=1.5, 1.5 Hz), 7.70 (1H, ddd, J=7.7, 1.5, 1.5 Hz), 7.57-7.50 (2H, m), 7.47-7.34 (3H, m), 7.25-7.20 (1H, m), 7.06 (1H, dd, J=6.2, 1.8 Hz), 7.06-6.85 (7H, m), 5.93 (2H, s).

**Example 7. 6-(4-Benzoyloxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-indole-2-carboxylic acid (E7).**

Step 1.

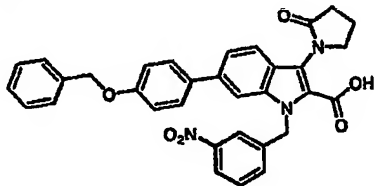
- 5    6-(4-Benzoyloxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.



- A stock suspension of a CuI/MeNHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHMe complex was prepared by heating CuI (95.2 mg, 0.5 mmol), MeNHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHMe (213  $\mu$ L, 2.0 mmol), and dioxane (5 mL) at 100 °C for 5 min using micro-wave irradiation. 1.5 mL of this solution was added to 6-(4-benzyloxyphenyl)-3-iodo-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (630 mg, 1.0 mmol, prepared according to the procedure in Example 1 from 6-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 4-benzyloxyphenylboronic acid, and 3-nitrobenzylbromide), K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> (530 mg, 2.5 mmol), and dioxane (5 mL). Pyrrolidone (390 mg, 5.0 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 95 °C for 24 h, cooled to room-temperature, pored into aqueous HCl (0.1 M, 100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (4x15 mL). The combined extracts were dried with brine (30 mL) and Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Concentration and chromatography gave the title compound (538 mg, 91%).

## Step 2.

6-(4-Benzyloxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)indole-2-carboxylic acid.

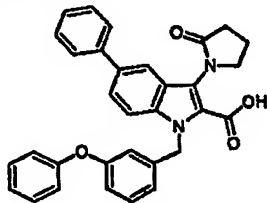


5

6-(4-Benzyloxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester was hydrolyzed in analogy with Example 2, Step 2, using dioxane as the solvent, to give the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 13.37 (1H, s), 8.10-8.06 (2H, m), 7.96 (1H, s), 7.66-7.26 (12H, m), 7.00 (1H, d, *J*=7.8 Hz), 6.06 (2H, s), 5.17 (2H, s), 3.81-3.74 (2H, m), 2.46-2.38 (2H, m), 2.24-2.06 (2H, m).

10

Example 8. 3-(2-Oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-5-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid (E8).



15

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, phenylboronic acid, 3-phenoxybenzylchloride and pyrrolidone. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz): δ 7.69-7.65 (1H, m), 7.63-7.52 (3H, m), 7.50-7.15 (7H, m), 7.13-7.01 (1H, m), 7.00-6.91 (2H, m), 6.88-6.79 (3H, m), 5.74 (2H, s), 3.98 (2H, t, *J*=7.0 Hz), 2.72 (2H, t, *J*=8.0 Hz), 2.41-2.34 (2H, m).

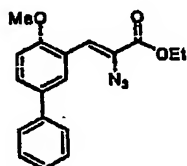
20

Example 9. 1-(3,5-Difluorobenzyl)-4-methoxy-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-7-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid (E9).

25

## Step 1.

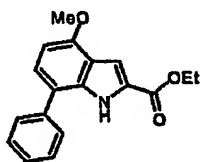
## 2-Azido-3-(4-methoxybiphenyl-3-yl)acrylic acid ethyl ester.



- 5 A solution of 4-methoxybiphenyl-3-carbaldehyde (1.8 g, 8.48 mmol) and azidoacetic acid ethyl ester (5.62 g, 44 mmol) in EtOH (15 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of NaOEt (3.13 g, 46 mmol) in EtOH (35 mL) at -25 °C. The mixture was stirred at that temperature for 10 min, kept in the freezer (-18 °C) for 24 h and poured with vigorous stirring to a cooled (0 °C) saturated
- 10 aqueous solution of NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (200 mL). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x25 mL) and the combined extracts were washed with brine (50 mL) and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Concentration and crystallization from EtOH gave the title compound (1.80 g, 66%).

## 15 Step 2.

## 4-Methoxy-7-phenylindol-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester.

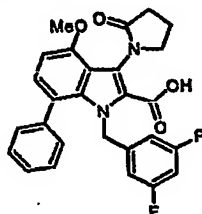


- 20 A solution of 2-azido-3-(4-methoxybiphenyl-3-yl)acrylic acid ethyl ester (1.75 g, 5.40 mmol) in *o*-xylene (25 mL) was added dropwise to boiling *o*-xylene (25 mL). The heating was continued for 5 min and the solution was allowed to cool to room temperature and kept in the freezer (-18 °C) for 16 h. The title compound precipitated and was filtered off, washed with petroleum ether and dried *in vacuo* (1.20 g, 74%).

25

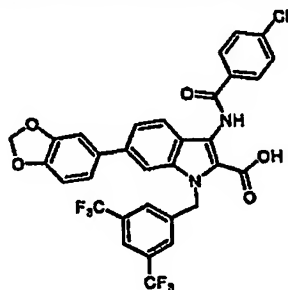
## Step 3.

1-(3,5-Difluorobenzyl)-4-methoxy-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-7-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid



The title compound was prepared from 4-methoxy-7-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester following the procedure in Example 7. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  7.34-7.21 (3H, m), 7.10-7.06 (2H, m), 7.01-6.91 (1H, m), 6.94 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.67 (1H, d,  $J=8.1$  Hz), 5.92-5.89 (2H, m), 5.51-5.28 (2H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 3.77-3.67 (2H, m), 2.37-2.17 (2H, m), 2.14-2.10 (2H, m).

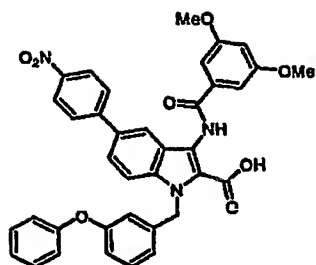
10 Example 10. 6-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(3,5-bis-trifluoromethylbenzyl)-3-(4-chlorobenzoylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E10).



The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 6-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 3,4-methylenedioxyphenylboronic acid, 3,5-bis-trifluoromethylbenzylchloride and 4-chlorobenzamide. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  10.35 (1H, s), 8.09-8.03 (2H, m), 8.01-7.99 (1H, m), 7.95-7.94 (1H, m), 7.81 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, d,  $J=8.6$  Hz), 7.66-7.59 (2H, m), 7.44 (1H, dd,  $J=8.6, 1.2$  Hz), 7.34 (1H, d,  $J=1.8$  Hz), 7.22 (1H, dd,  $J=8.2, 1.8$  Hz), 6.99 (1H, d,  $J=8.2$  Hz), 6.08 (2H, s), 6.05 (2H, s).

20

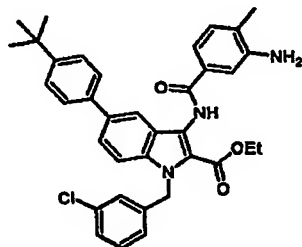
Example 11. 3-(3,5-Dimethoxybenzoylamino)-5-(4-nitrophenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E11).



The title compound was prepared from 5-(4-nitrophenyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (prepared from 5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (prepared from 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester and 4-nitrobromobenzene)), 3-phenoxybenzylchloride and 3,5-dimethoxybenzamide according to the procedure in Example 7. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 10.37 (1H, s), 8.32-8.24 (2H, m), 8.15 (1H, s), 8.01-7.91 (2H, m), 7.76 (2H, s), 7.41-7.16 (5H, m), 7.15-7.05 (1H, m), 6.99-6.90 (2H, m), 6.84-6.69 (4H, m), 5.90 (2H, s), 3.81 (6H, s).

10

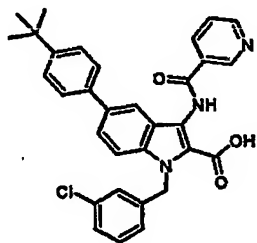
**Example 12. 3-(3-Amino-4-methylbenzoylamino)-5-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E12).**



15 The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 4-*tert*-butylphenylboronic acid, 3-chlorobenzylchloride and 3-amino-4-methylbenzamide. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 10.09 (1H, s), 8.00 (1H, s), 7.69-7.40 (6H, m), 7.36-7.31 (3H, m), 7.19-6.94 (3H, m), 5.86 (2H, s), 4.3 (1H, br s), 3.3 (1H, br s), 2.11 (3H, s), 1.29 (9H, s).

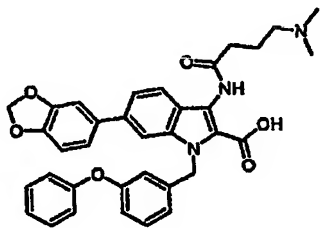
20

**Example 13. 5-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-3-[(pyridine-3-carbonyl)-amino]indole-2-carboxylic acid (E13).**



- 5 The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 4-*tert*-butylphenylboronic acid, 3-chlorobenzylchloride and nicotinamide. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 10.50 (1H, s), 9.20 (1H, s), 8.80-8.71 (1H, m), 8.42-8.31 (1H, m), 7.91 (1H, s), 7.32-7.52 (5H, m), 7.48-7.40 (2H, m), 7.34-7.27 (2H, m), 7.14 (1H, s), 7.06-6.97 (1H, m), 5.89 (2H, s), 1.29 (9H, s).
- 10

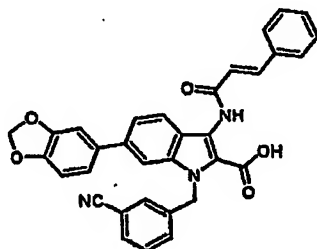
**Example 14. 3-(4-dimethylaminobutylamino)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid(E14).**



- 5 The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 6-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 3,4-methylenedioxyphenylboronic acid, 3-phenoxybenzylchloride and 4-dimethylaminobutyramide.
- <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  12.3-11.2 (1H, br s), 8.22 (1H, d,  $J=8.6$  Hz), 7.54 (1H, s), 7.37-7.05 (7H, m), 7.00-6.84 (5H, m), 6.71 (1H, dd,  $J=8.2, 2.3$
- 10 Hz), 6.14 (2H, s), 6.07 (2H, s), 2.81 (2H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 2.54 (6H, s), 2.46 (2H, t,  $J=7.3$  Hz), 1.94 (2H, dt,  $J=7.5, 7.3$  Hz).

**Example 15. 1-(3-Cyanobenzyl)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(3-phenylacryloylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E15).**

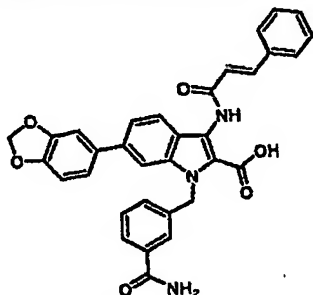
15



- The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 6-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 3,4-methylenedioxyphenylboronic acid, 3-cyanobenzylchloride and cinnamamide. <sup>1</sup>H NMR
- 20 (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  11.95 (1H, br s), 8.28 (1H, d,  $J=8.6$  Hz), 7.70-7.59 (6H, m), 7.54-7.37 (6H, m), 7.28-7.23 (2H, m), 7.15 (1H, dd,  $J=8.2, 1.8$  Hz), 6.96 (1H, d,  $J=8.2$  Hz), 6.88 (1H, d,  $J=15.8$  Hz), 6.16 (2H, s), 6.03 (2H, s).

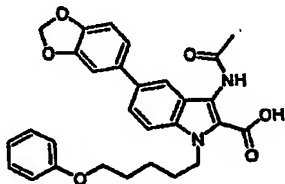


**Example 16. 1-(3-Carbamoylbenzyl)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(3-phenylacryloylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E16).**



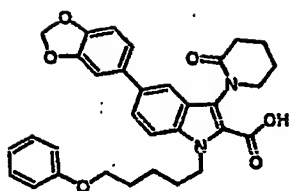
The title compound was isolated in the last synthetic step (the hydrolysis) in the preparation of the title compound of Example 15. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  11.58 (1H, br s), 8.17 (1H, d,  $J=8.6$  Hz), 7.89 (1H, s), 7.74-7.55 (6H, m), 7.48-7.37 (3H, m), 7.34-7.23 (4H, m), 7.16-7.08 (2H, m), 6.95 (1H, d,  $J=8.2$  Hz), 6.91 (1H, d,  $J=15.6$  Hz), 6.13 (2H, s), 6.03 (2H, s).

**Example 17. 3-Acetyl-amino-5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(5-phenoxy-pentyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E17).**



The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 3,4-methylenedioxy-phenylboronic acid, (5-bromopentyl)benzene, and acetamide. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz):  $\delta$  9.60 (1H, s), 7.71 (1H, s), 7.65-7.49 (2H, m), 7.30-7.15 (3H, m), 7.09 (1H, dd,  $J=8.1, 1.4$  Hz), 6.77 (1H, d,  $J=8.1$  Hz), 6.93-6.82 (3H, m), 6.04 (2H, s), 4.60-4.46 (2H, m), 3.90 (2H, t,  $J=6.3$  Hz), 2.09 (3H, s), 1.81-1.61 (4H, m), 1.48-1.32 (2H, m).

**Example 18. 5-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(2-oxopiperidin-1-yl)-1-(5-phenoxy-pentyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid (E18).**



The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 7 from 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, 3,4-methylenedioxy-phenylboronic acid, (5-bromopentyloxy)benzene, and 2-piperidone. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO, 200 MHz): δ 7.66-7.49 (3H, m), 7.30-7.18 (3H, m), 7.13 (1H, dd, *J*=8.1, 1.8 Hz), 6.97 (1H, d, *J*=8.1 Hz), 6.92-6.83 (3H, m), 6.04 (2H, s), 4.65-4.50 (2H, m), 3.91 (2H, t, *J*=6.4 Hz), 3.64-3.55 (2H, m), 2.44-2.28 (2H, m), 1.98-1.64 (8H, m), 1.52-1.33 (2H, m).

#### Example 19: Preparation of pharmaceutical compositions

Ingredients	mg/tablet
1. Active compound	10.0
2. Cellulose, microcrystalline	57.0
3. Calcium hydrogen phosphate	15.0
4. Sodium starch glycolate	5.0
5. Silicon dioxide, colloidal	0.25
6. Magnesium stearate	0.75

The active ingredient 1 is mixed with ingredients 2, 3, 4 and 5 for about 10 minutes. The magnesium stearate is then added, and the resultant mixture is mixed for about 5 minutes and compressed into tablet form with or without film-coating.

#### Example 20: Enzyme assay and results.

In the assay mPGES catalyses the reaction where the substrate PGH<sub>2</sub> is converted to PGE<sub>2</sub>. mPGES is expressed in *E. coli* and the membrane fraction is

dissolved in 20mM NaPi-buffer pH 8.0 and stored at -80 °C. In the assay mPGES is dissolved in 0,1M KPi-buffer pH 7,35 with 2,5mM glutathione. The stop solution consists of H<sub>2</sub>O / MeCN (7/3), containing FeCl<sub>2</sub> (25 mM) and HCl (0.15 M). The assay is performed at room temperature in 96-well plates.

- 5 Analysis of the amount of PGE<sub>2</sub> is performed with reversed phase HPLC (Waters 2795 equipped with a 3.9x150 mm C18 column). The mobile phase consists of H<sub>2</sub>O / MeCN (7/3), containing TFA (0.056%), and absorbance is measured at 195 nm with a Waters 2487 UV-detector.

The following is added chronologically to each well:

- 10 1. 100 µL mPGES in KPi-buffer with glutathione. Total protein concentration: 0.02 mg/mL.
2. 1 µL inhibitor in DMSO. Incubation of the plate at room temperature for 25 minutes.
3. 4 µL of a 0,25 mM PGH<sub>2</sub> solution. Incubation of the plate at room temperature for 60 seconds.
- 15 4. 100 µL stop solution.
- 180 uL per sample is analyzed with HPLC.

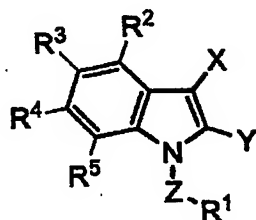
5

10

CLAIMS

1. A compound of formula (I):

5



(I)

wherein:

10 X is an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl residue, or an optionally substituted amide residue connected through its nitrogen atom;

Y is a carboxylic acid, a carboxylic acid ester, a carboxylic acid amide, a hydroxamic acid, a hydroxamic acid ester, or hydroxymethyl;

15 Z is a spacer;

R<sup>1</sup> is an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl residue;

20 At least one of R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, or R<sup>5</sup> is an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl residue.

2. A compound according to claim 1 wherein:

X is selected from:

5 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

10

Y is selected from  $HOCH_2-$ ,  $(R^8)NHC(O)-$ ,  $R^8ONHC(O)-$ , and  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

15 Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ; and wherein one or more atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain are optionally part of an additional  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-ring, where the said ring  
20 optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

25  $R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;
- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(Q)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8S$ -,  $R^8S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_q$ -,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;
- (iii) hydrogen, halogen, NC-,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(Q)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8S$ -,  $R^8S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q$ -, and  $R^8OS(O)_q$ ;

or any adjacent pair of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  may be part of an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,

5  $R^8$ -,  $R^8O$ -, and  $O$ =;

provided that at least one of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

10

A is selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

15

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

20 groups selected from halogen,  $NC$ -,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  
 25  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8S$ -,  $R^8S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_q$ -,  $O$ =,  $S$ =,  $R^8N$ =,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN$ =,  $R^8ON$ =,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N$ =,  $NCN$ =,  $O_2NCH$ =, and  
 30  $(R^9)(R^{10})C$ =;



- (iii) halogen,  $\text{NC}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{SC}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{C}(\text{Q}')\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{C}(\text{Q}')\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{C}(\text{Q}')\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{SC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{N}_3-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{Q})\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{NO}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_q\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_q-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q-$ , and  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_q-$ ;
- 10 (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups
- 15 independently selected from halogen,  $\text{R}^8-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{O}-$ , and  $\text{O}=\text{}$ ;

B is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally
- 20 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $\text{NC}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{SC}(\text{Q})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{C}(\text{Q}')\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{C}(\text{Q}')\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{C}(\text{Q}')\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{SC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{N}_3-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{12})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_q\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{Q})\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{Q})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{Q})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{NO}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_q\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_q-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_q-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_q-$ , and by an
- 25 alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is
- 30

optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or
- 5  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,
- 10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,
- 15  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

- (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,
- 20  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,
- 25  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene
- 30 chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene

chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8O$ -, and  $O$ =;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

5

(i) hydrogen;

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

10

(iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

15

groups selected from halogen,  $NC$ -,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,

20

$(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})$ -,  $R^8O$ -,  $R^8C(Q)O$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^8S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^8S$ -,  $R^8S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^8OS(O)_q$ -,  $O$ =,  $S$ =,  $R^8N$ =,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN$ =,  $R^8ON$ =,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N$ =,  $NCN$ =,  $O_2NCH$ =, and

25

$(R^9)(R^{10})C$ =;

or where  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and

which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3

unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by

30

one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC$ -,  $R^8$ -,  $R^8C(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)$ -,  $R^8OC(Q)$ -,  $R^8SC(Q)$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N$ -,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})$ -,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})$ -,

- $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q')N(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
5  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  
 $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

- 10  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 15 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})-$ ,  
 20  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}SC(W)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(W)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(W)O-$ ,  
 $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  
 25  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ , and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain  
 carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on  
 each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue,  
 where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or  
 more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  
 30  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

(iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-,  $R^{13}$ -,  $R^{13}C(W)$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)$ -,

- 5  $R^{13}OC(W)$ -,  $R^{13}SC(W)$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N$ -,  $R^{13}C(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})$ -,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})$ -,  
 $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  $R^{13}SC(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})$ -,  
10  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})$ -,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qN(R^{16})$ -,  $R^{13}O$ -,  $R^{13}C(W)O$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)O$ -,  $R^{13}OC(W)O$ -,  
 $O_2NO$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^{13}S$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_q$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q$ -,  $O$ -,  $S$ -,  $R^{13}N$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN$ -,  $R^{13}ON$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N$ -,  $NCN$ -,  $O_2NCH$ -, and  $(R^{14})(R^{15})C$ ;

15

or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, NC-,

- 20  $R^{13}$ -,  $R^{13}C(W)$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)$ -,  $R^{13}OC(W)$ -,  $R^{13}SC(W)$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N$ -,  
 $R^{13}C(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})$ -,  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})C(W)N(R^{17})$ -,  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  $R^{13}SC(W)N(R^{16})$ -,  
 $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})$ -,  
25  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})$ -,  $R^{13}OC(W)N(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})S(O)_qN(R^{17})$ -,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qN(R^{16})$ -,  $R^{13}O$ -,  $R^{13}C(W)O$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(W)O$ -,  $R^{13}OC(W)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO$ -,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^{13}S$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q$ -,  $O$ -,  $S$ -,  
30  $R^{13}N$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN$ -,  $R^{13}ON$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N$ -,  $NCN$ -,  $O_2NCH$ -, and  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})C$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ ,  $R^{16}$  and  $R^{17}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>18</sup>-, R<sup>18</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>18</sup>SC(O)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)N-, R<sup>18</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)C(O)N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)C(O)N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)C(O)N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>SC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>18</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>O-, R<sup>18</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>18</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>18</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>18</sup>S-, R<sup>18</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>18</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

- (iii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>18</sup>-, R<sup>18</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>18</sup>SC(O)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)N-, R<sup>18</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)C(O)N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)C(O)N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)C(O)N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>SC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>18</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>21</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>22</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>21</sup>)-, R<sup>18</sup>O-, R<sup>18</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>18</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>18</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>18</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>18</sup>S-, R<sup>18</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>18</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, S=, R<sup>18</sup>N=, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NN=, R<sup>18</sup>ON=, (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, O<sub>2</sub>NCH=, and (R<sup>19</sup>)(R<sup>20</sup>)C=;

- or where any pair of  $R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ ,  $R^{16}$  and  $R^{17}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-7 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, NC-,
- 5  $R^{18}$ -,  $R^{18}C(O)$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)$ -,  $R^{18}OC(O)$ -,  $R^{18}SC(O)$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N$ -,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})$ -,  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})C(O)N(R^{22})$ -,  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})$ -,  $R^{18}SC(O)N(R^{21})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})$ -,
- 10  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})S(O)_qN(R^{22})$ -,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qN(R^{21})$ -,  $R^{18}O$ -,  $R^{18}C(O)O$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^{18}OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO$ -,  $R^{18}S$ -,  $R^{18}S(O)_q$ -,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q$ -,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q$ -,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^{18}N=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  $R^{18}ON=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^{19})(R^{20})C=$ ;

15

$R^{18}$ ,  $R^{19}$ ,  $R^{20}$ ,  $R^{21}$  and  $R^{22}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

- 20 (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more halogens,  $H_2N$ -,  $MeHN$ -,  $EtHN$ -,  $i$ -PrHN-,  $Me_2N$ -,  $Et(Me)N$ -,  $i$ -Pr(Me)N-,  $Et_2N$ -,  $HO$ -,  $MeO$ -,  $EtO$ -,  $i$ -PrO- or  $=O$ ;

- 25 Q and Q' are substituents connected by a double bond, and are each independently selected from:

$O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;

- 30 W and W' are substituents connected by a double bond, and are each independently selected from:

O=, S=, R<sup>13</sup>N=, (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)NN=, R<sup>13</sup>ON=, (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=,  
O<sub>2</sub>NCH=, and (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)C=;

q is 1 or 2;

5

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

4  
1  
5  
3  
0  
0  
0



3. A compound according to claim 2 wherein:

X is selected from:

5 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

10

Y is selected from  $(R^8)NHC(O)-$ ,  $R^8ONHC(O)-$ , and  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ; and wherein one or more atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain are optionally part of an additional  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-ring, where the said ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

25  $R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

30

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;
- 5 (ii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, S=, R<sup>8</sup>N=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NN=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, O<sub>2</sub>NCH=, and (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)C=;
- 10 (iii) hydrogen, halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)C(Q')N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>SC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>12</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(Q)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(Q)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(Q)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S=, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, and R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-,
- 20 (iv) or any adjacent pair of R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, or R<sup>5</sup> may be part of an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or
- 25
- 30

more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

- provided that at least one of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any  
 5 residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

A is selected from:

- 10 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;
- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 15  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  
 20  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 25  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $S=$ ,  $R^8N=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ ,  $O_2NCH=$ , and  $(R^9)(R^{10})C=$ ;
- (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)-$ ,  
 30  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})C(Q)N(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8SC(Q)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,

- $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)N(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})S(O)_qN(R^{12})-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(Q)O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(Q)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(Q)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 5  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

- (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

B is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 20  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ , and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;
- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,

$R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 5  $O=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

(iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  
 $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  
 10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

(iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene  
 chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent  
 15 carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene  
 chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups  
 independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , or  $O=$ ;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

20

(i) hydrogen;

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

25 groups selected from B,

(iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

30 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,

$R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

5 or where  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,

10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NN=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

15

$R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

20 (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,

25  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13OS(O)_q-}$ ,  
 , and by an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene

chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent  
 carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene  
 30 chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -hetero-cycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

10

or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{11}$ , and  $R^{12}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,

- 15  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NN=$ ,  
20  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ , and  $R^{16}$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen;

25

- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,

$R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,

- 30  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,

$R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,

$(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

- (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -hetero-
- 5 cycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  $R^{18}ON=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- 10

- or where any pair of  $R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$  and  $R^{16}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-7
- 15 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{18}-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})N-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)N(R^{21})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qN(R^{21})-$ ,  $R^{18}O-$ ,  $R^{18}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{18}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{18}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{18}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NN=$ ,  $R^{18}ON=$ ,  $(R^{19})(R^{20})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;
- 20

- 25  $R^{18}$ ,  $R^{19}$ ,  $R^{20}$ , and  $R^{21}$  are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more
- 30 halogens,  $H_2N-$ ,  $MeHN-$ ,  $EtHN-$ ,  $i\text{-}PrHN-$ ,  $Me_2N-$ ,  $Et(Me)N-$ ,  $i\text{-}Pr(Me)N-$ ,  $Et_2N-$ ,  $HO-$ ,  $MeO-$ ,  $EtO-$ ,  $i\text{-}PrO-$  or  $=O$ ;



O=, S=, R<sup>8</sup>N=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NN=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, O<sub>2</sub>NCH=,  
5 and (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)C=;

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

The diagrams illustrate the steps of a bubble sort algorithm on the list [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7]:

- Initial state: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7
- Comparison between 6 and 7, no swap.
- Comparison between 5 and 6, no swap.
- Comparison between 4 and 5, no swap.
- Comparison between 3 and 4, no swap.
- Comparison between 2 and 3, no swap.
- Comparison between 1 and 2, no swap.

The list remains [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7] after the first pass.

4. A compound according to claim 3 wherein:

X is selected from:

5 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

10

Y is selected from  $(R^8)NHC(O)-$ , and  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

15 Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , or  $O=$ ; and wherein one or more atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain are optionally part of an additional  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl-, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-ring, where the said ring optionally  
20 contains 1-2 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

25  $R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

30

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

5 (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 10  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

15 (iii) hydrogen, halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

20

or any adjacent pair of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  may be part of an alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  
 25  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

provided that at least one of  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , or  $R^5$  is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions  
 30 independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

A is selected from:

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;
- 5 (ii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;
- 10 (iii) halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, and R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;
- 15 (iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, and O=;
- 20
- 25

B is selected from:

- 30 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-,

$R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,

5 methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

10 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ,  
15  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

(iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  
 $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qN(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  
20  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_q-$ , and  $R^8OS(O)_q-$ ;

(iv) An alkylene chain having 3 to 4 chain carbon atoms or a heteroalkylene  
chain having 3 to 4 chain atoms which on each end is connected to adjacent  
25 carbons in the aryl or heteroaryl residue, where the alkylene or heteroalkylene  
chain is optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups  
independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , and  $O=$ ;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

30

(i) hydrogen,

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

- 5 (iii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-,
- 10 R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;
- 15 or where R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>7</sup> are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-,
- 20 (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>q</sub>-, O=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;

25

R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, and R<sup>11</sup> are each independently selected from:

(i) hydrogen;

- 30 (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>13</sup>-, R<sup>13</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>14</sup>)(R<sup>15</sup>)NC(O)-,

$R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$   
 5 , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

(iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
 substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
 10 groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  
 $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$   
 15 ,  $O=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , and  $R^{11}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8  
 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and  
 optionally 1-3 unsaturations, and which optionally is substituted in one or more  
 20 positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  
 $R^{13}-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  
 $R^{13}S(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qN(R^{16})-$ ,  $R^{13}O-$ ,  $R^{13}C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^{13}OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_qO-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_qO-$ ,  
 25  $R^{13}OS(O)_qO-$ ,  $R^{13}S(O)_q-$ ,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_q-$ ,  $R^{13}OS(O)_q-$ ,  $O=$ ,  $R^{13}ON=$ ,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ , and  $R^{16}$  are each independently selected from:

30 (i) hydrogen;

5  $q$  is 1 or 2;

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.



5. A compound according to claim 4 wherein:

X is selected from:

5 (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

(ii)  $R^6C(O)N(R^7)-$ ;

10

Y is  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

Z is a  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or a heteroalkylene chain having 2 to 8 chain atoms, which optionally contains one or more unsaturations, wherein the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain and the heteroalkylene chain may be optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen,  $R^8-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8O-$ , or  $O=$ ; and wherein one or two carbon atoms of the  $C_{1-8}$ -alkylene chain or the heteroalkylene chain may be common to an additional cyclopropyl ring;

20

$R^1$  is selected from aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

25  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ , and  $R^5$  are each independently selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

30

(ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally

substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>2</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-, O=, R<sup>8</sup>ON=, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N=, NCN=, and O<sub>2</sub>NCH=;

(iii) hydrogen, halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, N<sub>3</sub>-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>11</sup>)-, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)O-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)O-, O<sub>2</sub>NO-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, R<sup>8</sup>S(O)<sub>2</sub>-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-, and R<sup>8</sup>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-;

or any adjacent pair of R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, or R<sup>5</sup> may be part of a methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, or dimethylmethylenedioxy residue;

provided that at least one of R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, or R<sup>5</sup> is aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions

independently of each other by one or more groups selected from A;

A is selected from:

(i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from B;

(ii) C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl, or C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more groups selected from halogen, NC-, R<sup>8</sup>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, (R<sup>9</sup>)(R<sup>10</sup>)NC(O)-,

- $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  
5  $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  
 $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  
10  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ , methylenedioxy,  
difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

B is selected from:

15

- (i) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
20  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  
methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

25

- (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,

- $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
30  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,

$R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- 5 (iii) halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  
 $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ , methylenedioxy,  
10 difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

$R^6$  and  $R^7$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen;

15

- (ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
groups selected from B;

- 20 (iii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $C_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally  
substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more  
groups selected from halogen,  $NC-$ ,  $R^8-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)-$ ,  
 $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^8C(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  
25  $R^8OC(O)N(R^{11})-$ ,  $N_3-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N(R^{11})-$ ,  
 $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)O-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NC(O)O-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)O-$ ,  $O_2NO-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2O-$ ,  
 $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2O-$ ,  $R^8S(O)_2-$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2-$ ,  $R^8OS(O)_2-$ ,  
 $O=$ ,  $R^8ON=$ ,  $(R^9)(R^{10})NS(O)_2N=$ ,  $NCN=$ , and  $O_2NCH=$ ;

- 30 or where  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are optionally joined to form a 5-6 membered ring, and  
which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation,  
and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more

groups independently selected from halogen,  $\text{NC}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  
 $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{O})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{O})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  
 $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{N}_3-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  
 $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  
5  $\text{O}_2\text{NO}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  
 $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $\text{R}^8\text{OS}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $\text{O}=\text{R}^8\text{ON}=\text{R}^9$ ,  $(\text{R}^9)(\text{R}^{10})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}=\text{R}^9$ ,  $\text{NCN}=\text{R}^9$ , and  
 $\text{O}_2\text{NCH}=\text{R}^9$ ;

$\text{R}^8$ ,  $\text{R}^9$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}$ , and  $\text{R}^{11}$  are each independently selected from:

10

(i) hydrogen;

(ii) aryl or heteroaryl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

15 groups selected from halogen,  $\text{NC}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NC}(\text{O})-$ ,  
 $\text{R}^{13}\text{OC}(\text{O})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  
 $\text{R}^{13}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  $\text{N}_3-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  
 $\text{R}^{13}\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{NO}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  
 $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{OS}(\text{O})_2-$   
20 , methylenedioxy, difluoromethylenedioxy, and dimethylmethylenedioxy;

(iii)  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -cycloalkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl, or  
 $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl, wherein any residues herein may be optionally substituted in one or more positions independently of each other by one or more

25 groups selected from halogen,  $\text{NC}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NC}(\text{O})-$ ,  
 $\text{R}^{13}\text{OC}(\text{O})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  
 $\text{R}^{13}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  $\text{N}_3-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})-$ ,  
 $\text{R}^{13}\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{NO}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  
 $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}\text{OS}(\text{O})_2-$   
30 ,  $\text{O}=\text{R}^{13}\text{ON}=\text{R}^{14}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{14})(\text{R}^{15})\text{NS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}=\text{R}^{14}$ ,  $\text{NCN}=\text{R}^{14}$ , and  $\text{O}_2\text{NCH}=\text{R}^{14}$ ;

- or where any pair of  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , and  $R^{11}$  are optionally joined to form a 5-8 membered ring, and which ring optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms and optionally 1 unsaturation, and which optionally is substituted in one or more positions by one or more groups independently selected from halogen, NC-,
- 5  $R^{13}$ -,  $R^{13}C(O)$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)$ -,  $R^{13}OC(O)$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})N$ -,  
 $R^{13}C(O)N(R^{16})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)N(R^{16})$ -,  $R^{13}OC(O)N(R^{16})$ -,  $N_3$ -,  $O_2N$ -,  
 $R^{13}S(O)_2N(R^{16})$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N(R^{16})$ -,  $R^{13}O$ -,  $R^{13}C(O)O$ -,  
 $(R^{14})(R^{15})NC(O)O$ -,  $R^{13}OC(O)O$ -,  $O_2NO$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_2O$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2O$ -,  
 $R^{13}OS(O)_2O$ -,  $R^{13}S(O)_2$ -,  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2$ -,  $R^{13}OS(O)_2$ -,  $O$ -,  $R^{13}ON$ -,  
10  $(R^{14})(R^{15})NS(O)_2N$ -,  $NCN$ -, and  $O_2NCH$ -,

$R^{13}$ ,  $R^{14}$ ,  $R^{15}$ , and  $R^{16}$  are each independently selected from:

- (i) hydrogen;
- 15 (ii)  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, optionally substituted in one or more positions by one or more halogens,  $H_2N$ -,  $MeHN$ -,  $EtHN$ -,  $i$ -PrHN-,  $Me_2N$ -,  $Et(Me)N$ -,  $i$ -Pr(Me)N-,  $Et_2N$ -,  $HO$ -,  $MeO$ -,  $EtO$ -,  $i$ -PrO- or  $=O$ ;
- 20 as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

6. A compound according to any of claims 1-5, which is selected from:

- 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid,
- 25 6-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-3-(2-thienyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,
- 5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,
- 3-Phenyl-1-(3-phenylpropyl)-5-(3-pyridinyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,
- 30 6-(4-Benzoyloxyphenyl)-3-(3-carboxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,

- 3-(3-Carboxyphenyl)-4-phenyl-1-(3-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 6-(4-Benzyloxyphenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 5 3-(2-Oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)-5-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 1-(3,5-Difluorobenzyl)-4-methoxy-3-(2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)-7-phenylindole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 6-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(3,5-bis-trifluoromethylbenzyl)-  
 3-(4-chlorobenzoylamino)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 10 3-(3,5-Dimethoxybenzoylamino)-5-(4-nitrophenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 3-(3-Amino-4-methylbenzoylamino)-5-(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 5-(4-*tert*-Butylphenyl)-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-3-[(pyridine-3-carbonyl)-amino]-  
 15 indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 3-(4-dimethylaminobutyrylamino)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(3-phenoxybenzyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 1-(3-Cyanobenzyl)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(3-phenylacryloyl-amino)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 20 1-(3-Carbamoylbenzyl)-6-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(3-phenylacryloyl-amino)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 3-Acetylamino-5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-1-(5-phenoxypropyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid,  
 5-(3,4-Methylenedioxyphenyl)-3-(2-oxopiperidin-1-yl)-1-(5-phenoxypropyl)-  
 25 indole-2-carboxylic acid,

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers or prodrugs thereof.

7. A compound according to any of claims 1-6 for use as a pharmaceutical.

8. A pharmaceutical composition comprising therapeutically effective amounts of a compound according to any of claims 1-6 together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

5 9. Use of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound according to any of claims 1-6 for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for alleviating, preventing, inhibiting, or treating a disease, disorder, or condition associated with inflammation, pain, or fever by administering to a subject in need of treatment thereof.

10

10. Use of a compound according to any of claims 1-6 by combining it with one or more compounds that are useful for alleviating, preventing, inhibiting, or treating a disease, disorder, or medical condition associated with inflammation, pain, or fever by administering to a subject in need of treatment thereof.

15

11. A process for preparation of the pharmaceutical composition according to claim 8 by combining a compound according to any of claims 1-6 together with a pharmaceutical diluent or carrier.

20

12. A method for alleviating, preventing, inhibiting or treating a disease, disorder, or condition associated with inflammation, acute or chronic pain, or fever, such as: inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, migraine, headache, low back pain, fibromyalgia, myofascial disorders, viral infections (e.g. influenza, common cold, herpes zoster, and AIDS), bacterial

25

infections, fungal infections, dysmenorrhea, burns, surgical or dental procedures, malignancies (e.g. breast cancer, colon cancer, and prostate cancer), atherosclerosis, gout, arthritis, osteoarthritis, juvenile arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, ankylosing spondylitis, systemic lupus

30

erythematosus, vasculitis, pancreatitis, nephritis, bursitis, conjunctivitis, iritis, scleritis, uveitis, wound healing, dermatitis, eczema, psoriasis, stroke, diabetes mellitus; neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimers disease and multiple sclerosis, autoimmune diseases, osteoporosis, asthma, chronic obstructive



pulmonary disease, pulmonary fibrosis, allergic disorders, and rhinitis, by administering to a subject in need of treatment thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a compound according to any of claims 1-6.

- 5 13. A method for eliciting a modulating effect on the membrane associated prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> synthase (mPGES) enzyme in a subject in need of treatment, which comprises administering to the subject of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound according to any of claims 1-6.

**ABSTRACT**

This invention relates to novel compounds, to pharmaceutical compositions  
5 comprising the compounds, as well as to the use of the compounds in medicine  
and for the preparation of a medicament, which acts on the membrane  
associated prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> synthase (mPGES) enzyme. It is of special interest  
to provide a treatment or alleviation of inflammatory diseases and disorders  
having an inflammatory component, for the treatment or alleviation of pain, and  
10 for the alleviation of fever.

PATY 03/07/03

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☒ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**